The Heinemann English
Wordbuilder

Vocabulary development and practice for higher-level students

Guy Wellman
The Heinemann English

Wordbuilder

Guy Wellman

HEINEMANN
Contents

Introduction

Names 8
Age 10
Family relationships 13
Marital status 15
Countries, Nationalities 17
Location 21

Build 25
From the neck up 26
From shoulder to fingertips 29
From the bottom down 31
Inside and outside the torso 32
Compound adjectives using parts of the body 34

The senses 36
Character and personality 39
Attitudes and beliefs 43
Thinking, wanting and knowing 46
Moods 50
Attitudes and relationships 53

Expressing oneself 56
Reacting to events 62
Sounds people make 65
Gesture, mannerism and body language 67
Posture and movement 71
Actions and activities 74

The universe 77
Physical geography 78
The plant world 80
The animal world 82
Food and drink 87

Buildings and rooms 91
Furniture and household 94
Vehicles 101
Clothes 107

Size, quantity, dimensions and measurements 110
Shapes 114
Substances, materials and textures 116
Colours 119
The condition things are in 122
Parts and components 125
What things do 127

Noises things make 132
Births, marriages and deaths 134
Work 140
Earning and spending money 146
Health and illness 149
Sport and games 154
Entertainment 159
Games and hobbies 163
Music and the Arts 168
Cooking, eating and drinking 173
Travelling 178

Business, industry and agriculture 181
Law and order, crime and punishment 185

Quality 188
Time 191
Numerals and proportions 196
Rise and fall 199
Normality and regularity 201
Probability, necessity and free will 203
Cause and effect 206

Index 208

Key 259
Introduction

Why

This book is designed to help the student of English whose only weapons in the battle against vocabulary have, until now, been a dictionary and a dog-eared note-book with lists of unconnected words, approximate translations alongside. I felt a book which would help students to build their active vocabulary, while at the same time helping with the recognition of less common or important words, would be a useful tool with which they could work their way deeper into the language.

Who

The book is designed to be used by a class of students, a couple of friends or an individual working alone. It is particularly useful for students who are not living in an English-speaking country, and so are not exposed to the everyday expressions that are presented and practised in this book.

The level is post-intermediate, which means it should be useful for students who have met the basic structures of English at least once, but have a relatively narrow vocabulary range. It is particularly good practice for users who wish to improve their speaking or writing, or for those who are preparing for a national exam or for the Cambridge First Certificate. Even Cambridge Proficiency exam candidates and other advanced users and students of English will find that there is a lot they can learn in the Heinemann English Wordbuilder.

Because this is a book about language, some of the sections will be most beneficial if the user can argue, experiment and practise with someone else, but users working alone at home can greatly improve and broaden their use of English through the presentation and written practice provided.

What

The Heinemann English Wordbuilder is made up of 60 units. Each unit focusses on one vocabulary area. It starts with a reference section which shows you the words (in bold print) at work, that is to say in context. This is followed by a practice section of exercises and ideas for further written or spoken practice with space for you to add any other expressions you know or meet. The Index at the end of the book contains every word and phrase and so acts as a quick reference guide for you. Some words have a star beside them. You should be careful how you use these. A brief note on each is included in the Key at the back of the book.

You will find there are passages to read, some long, a few quite difficult, and many full to the brim with the target vocabulary. There are often checking exercises after them to make sure the words have 'gone in', that is to say that you have remembered them. There are other exercises, too: matching, gap-filling, defining, ordering, etc. many of which have the answers on the page, which you are asked to cover. The advantage of this is that you can do the exercises again and again if you like, to check how your vocabulary is growing. There are games and quizzes, not really to test your general knowledge but rather to motivate you to study the language under review. (I, personally, would rather be asked to guess - or work out from given data — when, why or in what order certain things happened in Siberia than just read a page of historical facts, for instance. Wouldn't you?)
None of the material is 'authentic' English. You would have to read hundreds of extracts from other sources before you met the thirty or forty words and expressions that you will find grouped in each section here. You should, of course, read widely in addition to this book, to improve your reading skills and to see the vocabulary you have learnt in this book at work.

**How**

There are three main ways in which you can use the Heinemann English Wordbuilder in class or on your own: by looking up a particular word or expression in the Index and then working on that particular unit; by finding a unit of interest and working through it systematically; by working through all the units one by one.

If you are working alone, and you wish to use the book to increase your vocabulary range, work through at a reasonable pace. If you come across a section which you think is of no importance to you or in which you feel your vocabulary is already very strong, leave it out, perhaps returning to it later. Some parts are easier than others. Never spend too long on one particular section. Treat the book as a cross between a manual and a collection of short stories, not as a novel which you want to read quite quickly from cover to cover. Sometimes refer to it to check a word you're not sure of or need to use; sometimes browse through it and pick a section to read and study, just because it's of interest or perhaps an area of English you have never really considered before. And keep coming back to it, as you would a story you have just enjoyed. Each time you look at a particular section, you will find your vocabulary seems stronger, more refined, more elastic than the time before.

At the end of nearly every unit, there is a Practice section which asks you to incorporate the new and old vocabulary you have studied in a series of speaking or writing activities. They are an important part of the book. There is little point in having thirty thousand words in your head if you are only able to call up about five hundred when you find yourself in a particular situation. The Practice sections will help you to start using the vocabulary more or less automatically and without too much hesitation. These sections will also help your speaking and writing skills in general. There is enough here to give Examiners quite a surprise when they read your compositions and hear your answers to Interview questions.

The book contains a lot, we hope most, of the essential vocabulary within the topics covered. However, if you are a keen reader of or listener to English, you will occasionally come across items that are not included here. You might like to use the 'Add more words ...' sections in each unit to note these down and to make the Wordbuilder very much your own book.

**The Key**

At the end of the book, you will find a Key. Here we have given the answers to exercises. Look at the title of the unit you are working on and the page number. Then find these in the Key in order to check your work or find words you didn't know. When the answers depend on general knowledge or are particularly difficult, you will find them in the unit itself. Only refer to the Key when you have done a task. No cheating!

Note that in the practice sections there are some activities suggested which are better done with other students, so that you can speak together in small groups. You have been given the choice between speaking and writing, however, in case you are working on your own.

I hope you enjoy using the book. Writing it made me realise again what an interesting language English is. I hope you'll find you agree.

Guy Wellman
Names

Quiz

See how easily and quickly you can find the missing names in the sentences below. The answers are printed after the exercise to help you.

1. William F. Cody (1846 - 1917) was **nicknamed** ....
2. Mozart's **Christian names** were ....
3. Queen Elizabeth's youngest son is **called** ....
4. The Idlewild Airport in New York was **renamed** ... after this man's death.
5. ...'s **real name** is Richard Starkey.
6. A Swedish actress by the **name of** Greta Gustaffson adopted the screen **pseudonym** of....
7. Bach's **initials, J.S., stand for** ....
8. Mrs Mark Phillips' **maiden name** was ....
9. The newest airport in Paris is **named after** ....
10. Most Englishmen have pretended at some time in their life to be William Younger, **alias** ....
11. Samuel Clemens' **pen-name was** ....
12. The stretch of coastland between Toulon in France and Spezia in Italy is **known as** ....
13. The tallest building in Paris **takes its name from** the engineer, ....
14. Someone **christened** Adolph Schickelgruber became world-famous **under the name of** ....
15. The film recognised as the first 'talking picture' **was entitled** ....
16. During the seventies a **certain** Cassius Clay changed his **name to** ....

**Answers**


Practice

Discuss or write the answers to these questions.

1. What nicknames have you had, if any? Why did people choose them?
2. What will you call or have you called your children? Why?
3. What's the **derivation** of the most popular surnames in your country?
4. How has the fashion in first names changed in your lifetime?
5. How important do you think a good name is for pop and film stars?
6. How important is a good name for commercial products like shampoo, soap, cars or cigars? Can you think of any examples of names which have ruined a product's success?
Write a dialogue between a husband and wife as they try to agree on names for their expected child.

Add any other expressions about names as you meet them.
Age

Date of birth ___/___/19.. 
Age .. (years) ... (months)

Reading

Read through these expressions relating to how old we are and what age does to us.

1900
- a new-born baby, 10 lbs. 3 ozs. at birth
- ten months old
- nearly eighteen months old
- a toddler
- four next birthday
- coming up to school age
- at infants' school
- a schoolgirl

1910
- all those in the 9-11 age group
- he had a happy childhood
- he's a nice kid
- a teenager
- in his youth
- the agonies of adolescence
- still a minor, legally speaking
- a juvenile delinquent
- congratulations on your coming of age

1920
- you have to be over 21
- Miss June Hoskins, aged 22, of 35 Stanfield Road
- in his mid-twenties
- in his prime
- at the age of 26 she got married
- by the age of 26 she had lived in five different countries
- an adult
- a grown-up

1930
- don't be so childish
- he's turned thirty
- thirtyish
- not a youngster any more
- not as young as she was
- 36 years of age
- approaching middle-age
- the Under 40s Social Club

1940
- on the wrong side of forty
- beginning to look his age
- an ageing playboy
- beginning to feel her age
- I prefer mature people
she’s still got her **girlish** sense of humour
**in his late forties**
she’s **older than she looks**

1950
still playing his **schoolboy** tricks
**in her early fifties**
**he's aged a lot** lately
**he's getting on (in years)**
one of the **older generation**
**I'm twice your age**, young man!
the same **age** as her husband
**heading for retirement**

1960
**he's over the hill** *
Sunday Excursion for the **Over 60s**
growing **old** gracefully
**a pensioner (an old age pensioner, OAP)**
**he's coming up to seventy**
you're **old enough to know better**
you're **as old as you feel**
an **elderly** lady

1970
**a septuagenerian**
Help the **Aged**
she’s **still going strong**
**in her seventy-fifth year**
**his elder** brother’s death
**her eldest** sister’s death
becoming **senile**
**old age** comes to all of us

1980
**his eightieth birthday**
**an octogenarian**
he’s **as old as the hills** *
in her **second childhood**
**he's got one foot in the grave** *
he’ll soon **be pushing up the daisies** *
she's **kicked the bucket** *
she's **passed away** / **on**

**Practice**

Discuss or write the answers to these questions.

1 How has your relationship with your parents and other members of your family changed as you have grown older?
2 At which age would you most like to stop the world for ten years so you could enjoy it? Has that age passed or is it still to come?
3 Some people say there are a lot of similarities between childhood and old age. Do you agree?
4 Do you think young people are growing up faster these days? If so, give examples.
5 Do you agree or partly agree with the saying ‘**Life begins at forty**’?
Write on one or more of the following topics.

1 a dialogue between a psychiatrist and a middle-aged man who is worried about his age and getting old.
2 a section of your speech at a public meeting in support of the vote for teenagers.
3 the approximate age at which you normally think of or remember these people, as in the examples.

Winston Churchill \hspace{1cm} in his mid- to late sixties
Olga Korbut \hspace{1cm} in her early teens, just after adolescence

1 James Dean \hspace{1cm} 5 Marilyn Monroe
2 Ronald Reagan \hspace{1cm} 6 Marlon Brando
3 Elvis Presley \hspace{1cm} 7 Joan Collins
4 Mahatma Gandhi \hspace{1cm} 8 Mozart

Add any other expressions about age as you meet them.
Brain teaser

Try this little brain-teaser when you have five or ten minutes to spare. Alternatively, just note the names we give to the various members of our family.
Each of the fourteen people below is married to one of the others. From the information you are given, find out who is married to whom. Note there are three generations here. The answers are on page 14.

Alan is Caroline's nephew and Larry's cousin.
Barbara is Larry's mother and Maggie's sister-in-law.
Caroline is Edward's daughter and Maggie's sister-in-law.
David is Gordon's brother-in-law and Alan's uncle.
Edward is Ingrid's grandfather and Maggie's father-in-law.
Fanny is Caroline's mother and Alan's grandmother.
Gordon is Helen's son-in-law and Nigel's brother-in-law.
Helen is Barbara's mother-in-law and Larry's grandmother.
Ingrid is Gordon's niece and David's daughter-in-law.
John is David's father and Gordon's father-in-law.
Karen is Gordon's daughter-in-law and Maggie's daughter-in-law.
Larry is John's grandson and David's son.
Maggie is Larry's aunt and Fanny's daughter-in-law.
Nigel is Ingrid's father and Fanny's son-in-law.

Practice

1 Choose the most suitable word or phrase to complete the sentences below. The answers are on page 14.

1 Mrs Jones had ....
   a a trio  b a treble  c triplets
2 Mrs Vine had had ... the week before.
   a quarts  b quads  c a quartet
3 Twins often seem to ... a generation.
   a hop  b skip  c jump
4 There was a case of... twins in our town recently.
   a Japanese  b Chinese  c Siamese
5 There's a ... of twins in our family — on my father's ...
   a story  b geography  c history
   d tree  e side  f line
6 I was ... child, though.
   a an only  b a missing  c a single
7 All the members of our football team are related ... marriage,
   a by  b to  c on
8 When Mother remarried, her second husband, my ..., gave me a new bicycle.
   a forefather  b stepfather  c grandfather
9 He said to me, 'Look, I know you're not my own ..., but let's be friends.'
   a flesh and blood  b blood and guts  c skin and bones
10 My ... originated from a tribe of Red Indians.
    a ancestors  b ancients  c antiques
11 Not many of my own ... relatives are still alive.
    a blood  b skin  c heart
Family relationships

12 My grandfather fought at the Battle of Waterloo.
   a grand grand grand b great grand grand c great-great-great
13 My brother-in-law inherited £500,000 in his uncle’s ...
   a will b testament c wishes.
14 I was left £50 and a cat by ... relative; I believe it was a ... cousin - or perhaps it
   a a distant b an unclear c a long-distance
   d double e second f dual
   g grand h great i large
15 Peter is an orphan; he was ... at the age of two.
   a adjusted b adapted c adopted
16 Paul comes from a broken home; he has lived with a number of... parents.
   a loan b foster c second-hand
17 Mary was from a single-parent family; now she’s looked after by her ....
   a keeper b warden c guardian.
18 I’m off to have Sunday lunch with my ... now.
   a outlaws b by-laws c in-laws

Discuss or write the answers to these questions.

1 In what ways do you take after members of your family, in appearance and character?
2 How close are you to the various members of your family?
3 What sort of presents do you normally receive from your relatives?
4 Do most people you know get on with their in-laws?
5 What is the system of adopting and fostering in your country?
6 I wouldn’t like to be / have been an only child. Do you agree?

Write on one or more of the following topics.

1 Write a paragraph from a short story describing a wedding or a funeral.
2 Write an imaginary page from the diary of a foster-parent whose foster-child is
   leaving tomorrow.

Add any other expressions about family relationships as you meet them.

Answers
The married couple are: Ingrid and Larry, Edward and Fanny, Helen and John, Alan
and Karen, Gordon and Maggie, David and Barbara, Caroline and Nigel.

1 triplets 2 quads 3 skip 4 Siamese 5 history my father’s side 6 an only child 7 by marriage 8 stepfather 9 flesh and
   blood 10 ancestors 11 blood relatives 12 great-great-grandfather 13 will 14 a distant relative, second cousin, great-aunt
   15 adopted 16 foster-parents 17 guardian 18 in-laws
**Marital status**

MARITAL STATUS (tick as appropriate)
- single
- engaged
- married
- separated
- divorced
- widowed (if a widow or widower, please state which)

**Reading**

Note how various relationships are described in the letter from Hollywood below.

188 Beverley Hills,  
Hollywood,  
Nr. Los Angeles,  
California  
13th July 1985

Dear Fiona,

Thanks for all your news. Things are very much as normal here. Harry and I have **split up** - we both felt we had had enough of each other. He’s **dating** a girl who was **going steady with** Paul when you were here - I think they’re quite **serious** - and I’m seeing a film producer called Harvey who’s waiting for his **divorce** to come through. We’re more than **just good friends**' but I don’t know how long it will last. My **late husband’s former mistress is marrying his first wife’s third husband** on Saturday. In fact, it’s going to be a **double wedding** because her **second son by her first marriage** is **getting married** to the girl he’s been **sharing a flat with** for the past six months. You remember? That’s her **half-brother’s ex-fiancée**, the one who was **going out with** Jason back in January.

Anyway, how are you? Still the ideal couple over there in Eastbourne, are you? Do I hear **wedding bells**?

Lots of love for now,

Mandy

**Practice**

1. Choose the best words to complete the short conversations below.

   1 A Excuse me,...., can I see your driving licence?
      a Mr  b sir  c mate  
      B I'm sorry,...., I don't seem to have it on me.
      a sir  b policeman  c constable
   2 A ... ! Can I have a menu, please?
      a Sir  b Mister  c Waiter
      B Here you are,.....
      a madam  b Ms  c Mrs
   3 A Did you understand the question,.... Smith?
      a Sir  b Madam  c Miss
      B Yes, I did, my ....
      a master  b lord  c majesty
Marital status

Discuss or write the answers to these questions.

1 Do you think the idea of getting engaged is old-fashioned?
2 Why do you think divorce is nearly as popular as marriage in some countries but not others?

Write on one or both of the following topics.

1 Write, and act out if you wish, a typical conversation between a middle-aged married couple who are planning their typical weekday evening at home.
2 Write part of the letter that you write, angrily or sadly, to a newspaper, after reading the headline 'Hollywood Movie Star's Sixth Marriage Ends'.

Add any other expressions about marital status as you meet them.
Countries, Nationalities

Quiz

Below is a series of competitions for you to try in groups. Its main aim is not to test your geography, but to help you study and practise your English. Only look at the left-hand column. Cover the words on the right. Try to answer the questions. Then check your answers by looking at the words in the right-hand column.

Which countries have borders with the following groups of countries given below?

1 Guatemala
   El Salvador
   Nicaragua
2 Algeria
   Niger
   Chad
   Sudan
   Egypt
3 Colombia
   Costa Rica

2 Now, the reverse: which countries border those on the left below? And what nationality are most of the people in them?

1 Switzerland (five)
   Italy
   Liechtenstein
   France
   Austria
   West Germany
2 Bolivia (five)
   Brazil
   Peru
   Argentina
   Paraguay
   Chile
3 England (two)
   Scotland
   Wales

Travelling between the cities below, by the shortest possible land route, which countries would you pass through? And what nationality of people would you see most of? Name four countries for each journey.

1 From Tel Aviv to Ankara
   Israel
   The Lebanon
2 From Tel Aviv to Moscow
   Israel
   The Lebanon

1 From Tel Aviv to Ankara
   Israel
   The Lebanon
2 From Tel Aviv to Moscow
   Israel
   The Lebanon
Which countries have the currencies listed below? And what nationality are most of the people who have that kind of money in their pockets?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Currency</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Nationality</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>South Africa</td>
<td>South African</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yen</td>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renminbi</td>
<td>China</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rial</td>
<td>Iran</td>
<td>Iranian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Markka</td>
<td>Finland</td>
<td>Finnish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zloty</td>
<td>Poland</td>
<td>Polish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drachma</td>
<td>Greece</td>
<td>Greek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baht</td>
<td>Thailand</td>
<td>Thai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guilder</td>
<td>Holland (The Netherlands)</td>
<td>Dutch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rouble</td>
<td>Russia (The Soviet Union)</td>
<td>Russian</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Don't worry if you're finding them difficult; the idea is not to get them all right. I had the advantage of an atlas and encyclopedia.

Which countries have these cities as the capital? And what nationality are most of the people living in them?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>City</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Nationality</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Caracas</td>
<td>Venezuela</td>
<td>Venezuelan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sofia</td>
<td>Bulgaria</td>
<td>Bulgarian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nairobi</td>
<td>Kenya</td>
<td>Kenyan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seoul</td>
<td>South Korea</td>
<td>South Korean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Montevideo</td>
<td>Uruguay</td>
<td>Uruguayan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lagos</td>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td>Nigerian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Addis Ababa</td>
<td>Ethiopia</td>
<td>Ethiopian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amman</td>
<td>Jordan</td>
<td>Jordanian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harare</td>
<td>Zimbabwe</td>
<td>Zimbabwean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Riyadh</td>
<td>Saudi Arabia</td>
<td>Saudi (Arabian)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baghdad</td>
<td>Iraq</td>
<td>Iraqi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reykjavic</td>
<td>Iceland</td>
<td>Icelandic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In which countries do cars with these signs on them probably start their journeys? And what nationality are their drivers likely to be?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sign</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Nationality</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CDN</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>Canadian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEX</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>Mexican</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MA</td>
<td>Morocco</td>
<td>Moroccan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>Luxembourg</td>
<td>Luxembourger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>YU</td>
<td>Yugoslavia</td>
<td>Yugoslavian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Countries</td>
<td>Nationalities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>IRL</td>
<td>Ireland/Eire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>The USA (The United States)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>NZ</td>
<td>New Zealand</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In which countries would you find these dishes most often? And what nationality would most of the people eating them be?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Dish</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Nationality</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>satay sauce</td>
<td>Indonesia</td>
<td>Indonesian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>couscous</td>
<td>Morocco</td>
<td>Moroccan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>kebabs</td>
<td>Turkey</td>
<td>Turkish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>smo'rgos</td>
<td>Sweden</td>
<td>Swedish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>white chocolates</td>
<td>Belgium</td>
<td>Belgian (Flemish)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>brown cheese</td>
<td>Norway</td>
<td>Norwegian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>kangaroo-tail soup</td>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>Australian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>chicken livers in port</td>
<td>Portugal</td>
<td>Portuguese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>pastries with nuts and dried fruit</td>
<td>Denmark</td>
<td>Danish</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

English is an easy language, so most of the words in the third columns above, except those ending -ish or -ese can be used as an adjective or as a noun: She's Italian or She's an Italian — He's Israeli or He's an Israeli. This is always true of those words ending -an or -i. But there are some special cases, such as the form a Dutchman, an Irishman, an Englishman, a Frenchman, a Welshman. People from Scotland can be rather complicated. We can call them Scottish or Scotsmen. If you want to make them angry, you can call them Scotch. Alternatively, we can say He's (She's) a Scot. Using He's a ..., see if you can give the nationality of the following people:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Nationality</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Alan Wells, sprinter</td>
<td>a Scot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Lasse Viren, long-distance runner</td>
<td>a Finn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Bjorn Borg, tennis player</td>
<td>a Swede</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Hans Christian Andersen, storyteller</td>
<td>a Dane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Lech Walesa, trade union leader</td>
<td>a Pole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Kemal Ataturk, national hero</td>
<td>a Turk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Pablo Picasso, artist</td>
<td>a Spaniard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Alexander Dubcek, one-time party leader</td>
<td>a Czech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>John Walker, middle-distance runner</td>
<td>a New Zealander</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Game**

To finish, a word-association game. What do you think of when you hear the word Danish? Danish bacon? Danish butter? Danish cheese?

Write or say the word you think of first to go with each of the words below. Possible answers are given on the right. See how often you think of the same word as the one printed in the book.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Possible Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Danish</td>
<td>bacon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>German</td>
<td>beer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>French</td>
<td>perfume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Irish</td>
<td>whiskey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
<td>motor bikes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>American</td>
<td>football</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Greek</td>
<td>islands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>New Zealand</td>
<td>butter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>weather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Russian</td>
<td>dolls</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Countries, Nationalities

11 Argentinian
12 Egyptian

2 Now, play the game the other way round. Write or say the nationality you associate with the things listed below. Are they the same as those in the book?

1 cigarettes
2 cheese
3 carpets
4 coffee
5 tortillas
6 silk
7 shoes
8 rugby
9 goulash
10 tulips
11 cigars
12 guitar
13 restaurants

Add any other words or expressions about countries and nationalities as you meet them.
Location

Address............(number, road)
...................(town)
...................(county)
...................(post-code)

Reading

Here are some typical English and American addresses. Which do you like — or dislike — the sound of?

Apartment 2, Marigold Mansions
The Grange, West Hill Drive
21 Wellington Gardens
10 Rillington Place
365 Churchill Avenue
18 Newtown Crescent
33 Sunset Boulevard
28 Poplar Terrace
12 The Promenade
322 A Waite’s Walk
1 The High Street
8 Chestnut Grove
1 Tin Pan Alley
24 Lincoln Lane
130 Hovis Hill
48 Cannery Row
21 The Arcade
4 The Square
8 Park Close

Look at the letter to Santa Claus. How would you write your address?

Cover the right-hand column. Then read and become familiar with the directions in the left-hand column. When you can use the phrases on the left with ease, study the right-hand column. It contains expressions of location and the names of places associated with each line on the left. Learn to use a few at a time.

Well, it’s situated in central Germany - or rather, the centre of West Germany. It’s almost exactly due west of Prague, mid-way between Luxembourg and East Germany. It’s about 100 miles from the Belgian and French borders. It’s roughly in the Far East, in the Middle East in the North of Spain, in southern Portugal inside the Arctic Circle, in S.E. Asia near the Antarctic, within the tropics at the South Pole, on the Equator on the same line of latitude as Peking longitude 8 degrees East on the other side of the Andes from Lima 50 miles to the north of Oslo just over the border from El Paso approximately 40 kilometres from the coast some 30 miles from the nearest big town 10 miles along the coast from Valencia 100 miles down river from Khartoum three hours by car from Rio
half an hour's drive from Frankfurt, which is in turn an hour's flight from Berlin.

It stands on the Rhine, just above where the Rhine meets the Main, at the southern tip of the most picturesque stretch of the river. It is built on the edge of the Taunus forests and is surrounded to the north and west by trees.

It lies on the other side of the river from the city of Mainz and stretches several miles in the direction of Koblenz. Approaching it from the north, by car or by train, I always used to travel down the west bank of the river.

The district is some distance from the city centre, in one of suburbs lying to the south and running adjacent to the Rhine.

To find it from the Centre Station, you turn left out of the main gate, follow the main road up the hill, across the traffic lights, over the next crossroads and then through a long tunnel.
To get to the street, it's left at the next lights, under the railway bridge, second turning on the right then third left.

There is a short cut through the back streets but the long way round is easier.

The street is one of the turnings off to the right. You can't miss it.

The house is at the far end of the street, the third or fourth from the end on the right, just down from a little pizzeria.

It's a five-storey building and the flat is on the second floor. It's self-contained and has its own entrance down a little alley that runs along the side of the building.

Ignore the steps leading down to the basement and go up the first flight of stairs, through the door at the top, a few yards along the passage, then up the staircase to your right. Go through the hall. To your left is the second bedroom. The kitchen's

take the left fork at the junction over a railway crossing through a little wood leave the cathedral on your right follow the signs to Endgate head for the spire in the distance

it's about two miles as the crow flies quite a lot further by road half-an-hour's walk about forty minutes on foot a ten-minute bus ride quarter-of-an-hour on the underground twenty minutes by taxi

two blocks away from the hospital the third exit off the roundabout a sharp turning to your left a one-way street a no-through road acul-de-sac

halfway along on the left towards the end of the street on a bend in the road the last one in the street on a corner, opposite a florist's just across the road from a telephone kiosk next to an Indian restaurant just past a pillar box with a bus-stop right outside

a (semi-) detached house a terraced house a skyscraper a tower block a bungalow a maisonette a bed-sitter (bed-sitting room)

a long drive leading up to the house parking space at the front a green front door a side entrance over a shop
Location

on your right. Then go along another passage leading off to the left. The lounge, which looks out on to the street, is the second door on the left.

On your right as you go in, behind the door, there's an armchair; at least there was ten years ago.

That was where she was sitting when I left the room ten years ago. If she's still there, give her my regards, will you?

Practice

Look at the map of the world. Plan your ideal journey round the world.

Describe the layout of your home and where the furniture is in each room.

Explain how to get from your house to the nearest railway station.

Add any other words or expressions about locations you meet.
Build

Reading

Where do you belong below?

- he's a giant (of a man)
- she's an Amazon
- extremely tall
- tallish
- above average height
- medium build
- he's / she's got a good figure
- he's / she's well-built
- petite
- thin
- stocky
- plump
- corpulent
- built like a barrel*
- he's as square / big round as he's tall
- obese*
- overweight
- squat
- muscular
- slim
- below average height
- on the short side
- short
- tiny
- a midget
- knee-high to a grasshopper / an ant

Practice

Discuss or write the answers to these questions.

1. Which of the above adjectives and phrases would suit a student in your class or a member of your family?
2. Do you think your build sometimes determines your character? If so, how?
3. What sort of build should gymnasts, footballers and weight-lifters have?
4. Which word in each pair of words would you prefer people to use about you? Why?

   1. skinny / slim
   2. well-built / corpulent
   3. overweight / obese
   4. all skin and bones / there's more fat on a chip
   5. plump / stocky
   6. short / below average height
   7. a midget / knee-high to an ant

* Add any other expressions about your or other people's build as you meet them.
From the neck up

Reading

Think about hair first. Notice the different descriptions of hair in the two life stories below. Then read the advertisements.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Him</th>
<th>Her</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>at birth:</td>
<td>thick (jet) black hair</td>
<td>a few mousy strands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aged 3:</td>
<td>curly brown hair</td>
<td>hair in bunches fastened with slides, grips and ribbons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at 13:</td>
<td>a crew cut</td>
<td>back-combed, with a ponytail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at 16:</td>
<td>long sideboards, spikey</td>
<td>hair in plaits, otherwise completely straight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at 19:</td>
<td>shoulder-length hair</td>
<td>in a bun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at 23:</td>
<td>wavy, swept back, with a side parting</td>
<td>January: she's a blonde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>March: she's a brunette</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>May: she's a redhead (she's got auburn hair)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>July: she's ash-blonde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>October: she's dyed it pink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at 28:</td>
<td>neat style with a fringe</td>
<td>frizzy, slightly streaked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at 35:</td>
<td>a few grey hairs</td>
<td>combed forward, a few highlights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at 40:</td>
<td>his hair's receding</td>
<td>she's greying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at 45:</td>
<td>distinguished, but he's balding</td>
<td>her hair's thinning, so she's experimenting with a wig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at 50:</td>
<td>he's trying a toupee</td>
<td>her hair's going white fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at 55:</td>
<td>completely bald</td>
<td>the wig's matted, unmanageable, so she has a blue rinse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CLOVER
SHAMPOO
for dry, normal and greasy hair
gets rid of split ends
flyaway hair will be a thing of the past
fights dandruff
gives your hair body
5 good reasons to start using CLOVER!

AHEAD OF TIME
Unisex Hair Salon
Trim                                  £6.50
Cut and Blow Dry                      £16.00
Perm(ament Waving)                    £87.50
Razor cutting                         £2.50 extra
Highlights from                      £85.00

Practice

Now look at facial features. On the left are some adjectives often used to describe a particular part of the face or head. Cover the right-hand column and see if you can tell which part in each case.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Forehead</th>
<th>Cheeks</th>
<th>Chin</th>
<th>Eyelashes</th>
<th>Eyebrows</th>
<th>Nose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>high, lined</td>
<td>forehead</td>
<td>cheeks</td>
<td>chin</td>
<td>eyelashes</td>
<td>eyebrows</td>
<td>nose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>rosy, hollow</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>double, pointed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>false, long</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>bushy, pencil-thin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>snub, hook (or Roman)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
From the neck up

| 7 cauliflower, pierced          | ears          |
| 8 piercing, hazel              | eyes          |
| 9 square, upper                | jaw           |
| 10 thick, cherry               | lips          |
| 11 wide, mean                  | mouth         |

And here you can see most of these features in these two pictures.

Demonstrate the actions listed below and explain when you would use them.

1 smack your lips
2 raise your eyebrows
3 prick up your ears
4 mouth something
5 flutter your eyelashes
6 purse your lips
7 blow your nose
8 puff out your cheeks
9 turn your nose up

Keep the right-hand column covered. On the left are some definitions of facial features. Write or say what they are. Then find the appropriate word on the right.

1 openings in the nose
2 the soft lower parts of the ears
3 flat parts on the side of the face above the cheek-bones
4 hair that grows on the chin and jaw
5 the bony case that protects the brain
6 the tissue our teeth are in
7 the passage from the mouth towards the stomach
8 the semi-poetic name for the forehead
9 the colour and state of the skin on the face
10 hair that grows above the upper lip
11 the movable skin which opens and closes the eyes
12 the organ used for tasting, swallowing and speech

Study the words and the picture. Then cover the words and test your memory while looking at the picture.

1 lines, wrinkles
2 a wart
3 bags under the eyes
4 a beauty spot
5 freckles
6 a mole (a birthmark)
7 a(cold) sore
8 a sty
9 spots, pimples
10 dimples
11 aboil
12 a scar
When do you get problems with your head, neck and face? Match the accidents 1-13 below with their causes in the right-hand column.
You can still have all sorts of problems even when you are enjoying yourself.

1 a stiff neck from swimming underwater a lot
2 a sore throat from diving headfirst into an empty pool
3 bloodshot eyes from eating too many sweets
4 eyestrain after that early morning swim
5 a headache or migraine from watching the Wimbledon doubles final
6 toothache, sore gums or after refusing to leave the night-club
7 an ulcer in the mouth
8 a runny nose or from trying to read in the dark
9 a blocked-up nose
10 a black eye, swollen lips and from staying too long in the disco
11 a nosebleed from shouting too much at the football match
12 feeling giddy or dizzy from dancing too many Viennese waltzes
13 concussion

I had a pretty bad week myself last week. (These columns are in the right order.)

On Monday, I **singed my eyebrows**
On Tuesday, I **grazed my chin and scratched my cheek**
On Wednesday, I **banged my head**
On Thursday, I **chipped one of my front teeth**
On Friday, I **knocked the other front tooth out**
On Sunday, I **scalded my face**
**split my lip open**
**came out in a rash**
**and had earache**

Find and cut out photos of people from newspapers and magazines. Label the facial features which stand out.

Describe the face that comes to mind when you imagine a typical:

1 headmaster / headmistress
2 boxer
3 second-hand car salesman
4 air-force officer
5 English king
6 Chinese girl
7 pop drummer.

Write a short police 'Wanted' notice regarding one of the 'criminals' in your class or family. Draw an accompanying picture if you can.

Add any other expressions about these parts of the body as you meet them.
From shoulder to fingertips

Game

Cover the right-hand column. Which parts of the picture above - or things associated with a particular part of the picture - would these people be most concerned with?

1 a fortune teller
2 a bridegroom
3 a driver who notices a student hitching a lift
4 a karate expert
5 a boxer
6 a detective searching for clues
7 a policeman carrying handcuffs
8 a manicurist
9 a soldier on rifle parade
10 passengers on a crowded tube train
11 someone keen to see if you're ticklish
12 a mother whose son has been in a fight
13 a Mr Universe judge
14 someone trying to see what you're pointing at
15 a pianist playing top notes

Practice

1 Many parts of the body are verbs as well as nouns. Demonstrate or write a description of these actions.

1 thumb through a book
2 thumb a lift
3 hand someone a pen
4 palm someone off with something second-rate
5 elbow your way through the crowd
6 shoulder responsibility
7 finger a document
From shoulder to fingertips

Act or write an interview in the doctor's surgery. The patient describes the pains he or she keeps getting in his/her arm. The doctor does some tests, tries to decide what's wrong and suggests what should be done.

Add any other expressions about these parts of the body as you meet them.
From the bottom down

Reading

Read the excerpts from little Johnny's composition below. Make sure you know which sections of the diagram he is referring to.

13.1.90 My Christmas Holiday

As a special treat, my Mummy and Daddy took me on a winter sports holiday this year. We all went to the Swiss Alps for a fortnight. I enjoyed the first few days, but skiing was more difficult than I thought. On the third day, I twisted my knee, bruised my shin, sprained my ankle, damaged a tendon in the back of my foot - my Achilles tendon, I think it's called - got cramp in my calf, squashed my big toe, got corns on my heels and hard patches of skin on the soles of my feet, pulled a muscle in my thigh, and rubbed all the skin off my instep. On the fourth day, I was unfortunate ... as we were getting on the bus to the airport, I tore a hamstring. (My broken leg and fractured pelvis happened after I got home.)

Practice

Make sure you understand the idiom in each of these questions, then think of a possible answer. Write it down or compare your ideas with a partner.

1 Why was the teacher rocked back on his heels?
2 How did you put your foot in it with your neighbour?
3 Why was the teacher on her knees after the lesson?
4 In what ways do students have to toe the line?
5 Why haven't you got a leg to stand on concerning your homework?
6 Why have you got to be on your toes in that teacher's lesson?
7 How did your parents cramp your style at the disco?
8 When should parents make children stand on their own two feet?

Discuss or write the answers to these two questions.

1 What exercises do you know of that are designed to keep the different parts of the leg in good shape? Explain how to do them.
2 What problems do people have with the different parts of their legs, through accidents, age or lifestyle? What can they do about them?

Add any other expressions about these parts of the body as you meet them.
Inside and outside the torso

Reading

Look carefully at the two pictures below and the list of words under each of them. Then test yourself on the names of things by covering the lists of words and trying to identify each number and letter in the pictures.

Note the following.

1 Her bust is 38", his chest is 40".
2 She's got a 24" waist. His waist is 32".
3 She measures 40" round the hips. His inside leg measurement is 32".
4 I've got a stomach-ache,
5 a bad back,
6 and a pain in my abdomen.
7 Hasn't he got a fat belly?*
8 Were you breast-fed as a baby?
9 Let the baby sit on my lap.
10 My bottom aches from sitting down all day.
11 The belly-dancer had a bare stomach except for the pearl in her navel (tummy button).

32
Practice

What's where inside us? Study the words below, then test yourself with the help of the picture.

1 collar bone
2 spine or backbone
3 a vertebra (vertebrae)
4 heart
5 arteries
6 liver
7 intestines
8 ribs
9 pelvis
10 appendix
11 lungs
12 veins
13 kidneys
14 bladder

Now describe where each organ or bone in Exercise 1 is found in the body.

Write a simple description of the function of each of the items in Exercise 1.

Add any other words or phrases about these parts of the body you meet here. (If you are still curious, you can consult a bi-lingual dictionary for further organs.)
Compound adjectives

Study and practice

There are a lot of compound adjectives in English. Here are some common ones which are formed from parts of the body. For example, heart gives us warm-hearted, kind-hearted, hard-hearted etc.

Look at the list of similar compound adjectives below and guess what they mean. Then read sentences 1 - 10. Complete each sentence with the appropriate adjective(s).

left-handed  double-breasted  narrow-waisted  cold-blooded
big-headed  pot-bellied  red-faced  round-shouldered
sour-faced  cross-eyed  knock-kneed  slim-hipped
light-fingered  strong-willed  bow-legged  empty-handed
dark-skinned  fair-haired  broad-minded  right-footed

1 My boss is terribly ..., walking around as if he were holding his salary cheque between his knees. His wife's quite the opposite: ..., as if she had just got off a horse.
2 I used to wear ... suits until I decided that one button was far more suitable for ... people such as myself.
3 My sister is so ... and ... she reminds me of one of those long thin wine bottles.
4 He's Scandinavian, so he's ... and ..., and looks far better in jeans than I do.
5 It looked as if United were going to return home ... until Bradfield scored with an incredibly powerful... shot from outside the penalty area.
6 Off we go on holiday with visions of returning ... and beautiful, forgetting that we always come back ... and with peeling backs.
7 Hoskins, if you go on staring at that magazine any longer, you'll go .... Now either be ..., dear boy, and put it away or give it to me until the end of the lesson.
8 My boss is so ..., always looking as if he knew tomorrow was going to be the end of the world. And his wife is so ... ; I have to keep a careful eye on my things when they come round to the house, or they just disappear.
9 Most... tennis players seem to win more easily against right-handers. Talking of tennis players, aren't those professionals a ... bunch, shouting all the time about how great they are?
10 A lot of liberal,... people find it difficult to accept that there is such a thing as ... murder.

Practice

1 Complete each sentence with the appropriate word from the list below. Note that they are all adjectives made from parts of the body, and that bloody is a frequently used and not very rude swear word.

hairy  cheeky  bloody  leggy  handy
nosey  hearty  skinny  heady  chesty

1 ... congratulations on your success!
2 I could watch those ... women high jumpers for hours.
3 That sounds like a rather ... cough you've got.
4 The shops are quite ... — only two minutes' walk.
5 No, you can't borrow my girlfriend for the evening! Don't be so ...!
6 It's nothing to do with you what we're doing tonight! Don't be so ...!
7 She's so ... that when she turns sideways, she's almost invisible!
8 Did you know he's got a ... chest? Like a doormat, it is!
9 I reckon you’d have to be a ... fool to want to learn this ... stupid language!
10 I feel quite ... after getting all those right. Or perhaps it’s the champagne.

Discuss or write the answers to these questions.

1 Which elements of your body - from split ends to toenails - do you wish were different in some way?
2 What are the necessary physical attributes of the following types of athlete?
   Use the phrases: You have to be I have ...; You need ...; You can’t... without ... .
   1 a swimmer
   2 a skier
   3 a tennis player
   4 a footballer
   5 a sprinter
3 How important do you think physical appearance is for a happy or successful life?

Write a paragraph on one of the following topics.

1 A description in your diary of how your body felt when you suffered from and slowly recovered from frost-bite or bad sunburn.
2 Continue this paragraph: 'Suddenly the door opened and the strangest-looking man I have ever seen came into the room. ...'
3 A description from your short story of the people in the waiting room of a marriage guidance bureau.

Add any other adjectival expressions about the body as you meet them.
The senses

Dialogue

Read the conversations below. Note these patterns used to talk about the five basic senses.

A Look at that!
B I can't see anything.
A It looks like a boat.
B Where?
A Over there! It's clearly visible.
   It's just come in sight
   It's just come into view.
B You must have good eyesight.
   You must have sharp eyes.

A Listen to that!
B I can't hear anything.
A It sounds like a cry for help.
B Where's it coming from?
A Over there! It's clearly audible.
   It's a very clear sound.
B Your hearing must be good.
   You must have good ears.

A Smell this!
B I can't smell anything.
A It smells like stale fish.
B Does it?
A Yes, it's quite a strong smell.
   You must have a very sensitive nose.
   You must have a keen sense of smell.

A Taste this!
B I can't taste anything wrong.
A It tastes like vinegar.
B Really?
A Yes, it's got quite a strong (after-)taste.
B You must have a very sensitive palate.
   Your sense of taste must be very good.

A Touch (Feel) this!
B I can't feel anything.
A It feels as if it's vibrating.
B Where?
A Here. It's quite a strong sensation.
   It's a very funny feeling.
B You must have very sensitive fingers.
   You must have a special sense of touch.

Remember: taste can also relate to artistic and social life.

Is your bedroom tastefully decorated?
Don't you think that joke you told at the party was in rather poor (bad) taste?
The vicar certainly thought it was tasteless.

Note too:

That darts player has a good eye.
That musician has a good ear.

And also:

It's out of sight, out of earshot, and out of reach.
There are more than five senses, aren't there? Have a look at this short conversation.

A Something tells me you could do with another drink.
B You must be psychic. Thanks.
A I can sense that you probably love tea. Is that so?
B Great. You must have extra-sensory perception.
A And I feel it in my bones that it's China tea. Am I right?
B Fantastic. We must be telepathic.
A My intuition says it's green tea.
B What an instinct you have!
A A small cup, is it?
A No, a large one, please.

Practice

Often our five senses don't work as well as they might. Cover the right column, and then the left, and try to recall the equivalent expression from the other column.

to be short-sighted / long-sighted  to be hard of hearing
to go blind  to go deaf
to wear glasses / contact lenses  to wear a hearing aid
to be as blind as a bat  to be deaf as a post
to read Braille  to lip-read
to use sign language  to go to an ear specialist
to be colour blind  to be tone-deaf (of music)
to visit an oculist  to go to an ear specialist

Look at the list of words formed from the word sense. Complete the sentences with an appropriate word from the list or the word sense, which you will use three times.

sensible sensitive sensation sensational sensual sensuous senseless

1 What should you say? You'll just have to use your common ....
2 The news of the scandal caused a ....
3 I've always found the buzzing of bees has a very .... attraction.
4 I think the .... thing to do would be to stop now and get a good night's sleep.
5 In one .... I think you're right, but not completely.
6 Kleindorf's defeat of Real Madrid in the European Cup was ....
7 It's .... trying to argue with him; he never listens to a word anybody says.
8 She's very .... on the subject of divorce, so be careful what you say.
9 I felt a .... of 'deja vu' when I was turned down for the job the second time.
10 The cashier at the bank has incredibly .... hands.

A hundred British people were asked to complete the phrase a sense of. These were the most popular choices. Do they tell you anything about the British? Complete each sentence 1-9 with an appropriate phrase.

a sense of humour  a sense of duty  a sense of power
a sense of fairness  a sense of adventure  a sense of timing
a sense of discipline  a sense of fun  a sense of balance

1 Having a little red button not far from his desk must give a President an enormous
2 Without a .... you'll never be able to hit the ball correctly.
3 Some people say that a ... is the only thing that makes difficult situations bearable.
4 He went ahead and arrested his uncle through a ....
5 One of the major tasks of parents should be to give their children a ....
6 His inborn ... led him to the slopes of the Himalayas.
7 At high altitudes one is apt to lose one's ... .
8 His ... is so strong, he protests to umpires on behalf of his opponent.
9 Personally, I don't call putting dead fish in friends’ beds a sign of a healthy....

Discuss or write the answers to these questions.

1 What ten things would you miss most if you were blind or deaf? In other words, what are your favourite sights and sounds?
2 What evidence have you heard of people who are deprived of one sense having unusually well-developed other senses?
3 Do you believe in a sixth sense? Have you heard of any cases of ESP (extra-sensory perception)?
4 Goethe said that a meal should please the eye before it pleases the stomach. How important do you think this is?

Write a paragraph on one or all of the following subjects.

1 Your sensations (visual, aural and personal) while watching a forest fire. This will be part of your short story.
2 A page from your diary, recording your feelings and sensations as you looked at a room the morning after a party.
3 Part of a letter to a friend telling him or her about a lovely long walk you had one spring morning.

Add any other words about the senses as you meet them.
**Character and personality**

**Game**

Are we the kind of people we are because of the time of the year we were born? See if you can complete the adjectives below at home over the next day or so. Each one has a clue beside it to help you and a dot for each letter that you need to add.

**ARIES** (Mar 21 - Apr 20)
You won't find him in the corner at the party. o.tg.i.g
That's her doing the can-can on the table. ex...vrt
She has no problems. c.. ef.ee
He never frowns. l...t-h.a.t.d
She tells no lies. t.u.hf..
He has few secrets. o.n
He'll tell you if he doesn't like your make-up. c.nid
She'll tell you if she doesn't like your after-shave. f..k
He's the person to ask for that five pounds you are owed. e..y-g...g

**TAURUS** (Apr 21 - May 20)
He knows what he wants and he usually gets it. s.r.n-wi..ed
She never gives up without a fight. d.tr.i.ed
He knows he's good. s.l-..as.u..d
She knows she's as good. s.l-co..i..nt
She likes to be the boss, the one on top. d.m.n.n.t
He wants to be even bigger, even better — the best am..t.o.s
and expects high standards of performance from others. d.m.n.i.g
He works 18 hours a day, jogs, and plays squash. e.e.ge..c
She hates to lose, in business or at tiddlywinks. c.mp...t.e

**GEMINI** (May 21 - Jun 20)
She thinks she's good. p.o.d
He thinks he's superior to everyone. a.r.g..t
'As the most experienced and sensible person present, I...' p.mp.s
'Of course, I could have beaten him even more easily, but I wanted to give him a chance.' b..s.tf.l
She won't share her presents with her sister. s..f..h
He spends half the day in front of the mirror. v..n
She thinks the whole world revolves around her. s.f-c.n.r.d
He thinks he's the centre of the universe. e.o.c..t.c
She looks down on anyone who hasn't got a heated indoor swimming pool at home. s.o.b.Ji

**CANCER** (Jun 21 - Jul 20)
She seems to enjoy finding fault with others. c.it...l
He'll take off marks if you don't dot your i's. P-t.y
She can only ever see one side of things. na...w-m.n.n.d
He always likes the fat taken off his bacon. f.s.y
He's like a donkey. s.u.b.r.
She's like a mule. o.s.in.t.
He loves money, loves having 'things'. m.t.r.a.i.t.c
**Character and personality**

Oh yes, he'll help you - if you make it worth his while.
She never lets her husband out of her sight.  

**LEO (Jul21-Aug21)**
You never know what he's going to do.
He never knows what he's going to do.
There are two things I don't like about her - her face!
Be careful what he's saying about you behind your back.
Be careful what she's doing while your back is turned.
He behaves like the weather in April.
She behaves like the proverbial primadonna.
He says what I want to hear, not what he thinks.
He never does all the things he says he'll do.

**VIRGO (Aug 22 - Sep 22)**
Other people's points of view always impress him.
She'd believe you if you told her pizzas grew on trees.
She lacks will-power.
He lacks courage.
He doesn't do much — he just sits back and watches.
She'll do what she's told.
You never know what he's thinking.
'It was an honour just to be on the same court as McEnroe.
How I beat him 6-0, 6-0, 6-0? It was just luck.'

**LIBRA (Sep 23-Oct 22)**
He uses his common sense.
She never does silly things under pressure.
She's like the Libran symbol of the scales.
She'd solve all the problems on a desert island, and nothing would upset her.
He'd be a good judge or referee.
She's got both feet on the ground and is really down-to-earth.
His heart rarely rules his head.
I think, therefore I am. That's my approach.

**SCORPIO (Oct 23 - Nov 22)**
Keep out of her way when she loses her temper.
He's always the first one to put his fists up, and he's quick to use them - to the full.
He may even add a boot or two for good measure.
She won't let anything stand in her way.
He has no principles about hurting other people.
He almost seems to enjoy causing trouble.
She's a strong believer in an eye for an eye, and a tooth - or, in her case, teeth - for a tooth.

**SAGITTARIUS (Nov 23 - Dec 20)**
Those with some Latin blood in their veins.
They are fiery and emotional.
She's not afraid to go mountain climbing, or to join a mountain rescue team.
He wants to go to wild and unexplored places.
They're vivacious, like champagne bubbles.
She puts her heart and soul into her profession.
On the sinking ship, the dog never left its master's side.
These friends do not desert you in a crisis.

**CAPRICORN (Dec 21 - Jan 19)**
He'd always stop to help a disabled person across the road.
That's her on the beach wiping oil off the sea-birds' feathers.
She wouldn't hurt a fly.
He leaves £10 tips.
He wouldn't mind if she dyed her hair green.
She lets him sleep when he gets back from a hard day's work.
He defends her in any argument.
She kisses him on the cheek every minute or so.
She always sends a card on her parents' anniversary.

AQUARIUS (Jan 20 - Feb 18)
If she likes you, she'll fling her arms around you and say so.
She jumps into the bath without testing the water.
Lose your way with her in the car? You'd better not!
He's constantly like a child on Christmas Eve.
He's a typical 'angry young man'.
She's Trotsky, Castro and Guevara all rolled into one.
He's got a memory like a sieve.
He thought a double brandy would help the baby sleep.
If she gets an idea in her head, there's no stopping her.

PISCES (Feb 19 - Mar 20)
There she is, over there, on her own in the corner.
He's afraid that the whole world is looking at him.
She peeps round her front door like a mouse.
He's always the last to introduce himself.
Be careful not to upset her. It's easily done.
He can see beauty in a pile of rubbish.
He can then turn the pile of rubbish into a work of art.
I was moved to tears by the beauty of his sculpture.
He doesn't know who he is, where he is, what to do or why.

Practice

Ladies and gentlemen, which of these traits of character do you most dislike in a partner? Place them in order.

vanity
obstinacy
arrogance
shyness
hypocrisy
selfishness
snobbishness
meanness
pomposity
dishonesty
timidity
rashness
stubbornness
pettiness
possessiveness
aggressiveness

Ladies and gentlemen, which of these qualities is most important for you in a partner? Place them in order of importance.

compassion
tolerance
sincerity
modesty
vivacity
patience
imagination
sensitivity
frankness
generosity
imagination
passion
courage
self-assurance
ambition
humility
creativity

Discuss or write down the personal characteristics (good and bad) that you would expect to find in these people.

1 a nurse
2 the chairman of a multinational company
3 an actor
4 a politician
5 a teacher
Character and personality

Discuss or write answers to these questions.

1 How would you say your **national character** is different from that of people in the immediately neighbouring countries?
2 How do you think your character has changed or developed over the years? Are there any aspects of your personality you still don't like?
3 Write a sentence to describe the character of each of your fellow students or family. Then read the sentences to them. See if they can identify each person.
4 Choose two of the star-signs and write a paragraph for each, as if for a magazine, analysing personality. Use the adjectives in those sections to give you some ideas.
5 'The weaker sex? The fairer sex? Not any more!' Write an article of 250 - 300 words contrasting the image of women today with that of a few hundred years ago.

Add any other expressions about personality and character as you meet them.
Attitudes and beliefs

Reading

Read the text that follows in stages - it's rather long - and note the language it offers you in the area of opinions, beliefs and attitudes.

Fifties people wore pointed shoes. Sixties people wore flowers in their hair. Seventies people dyed their hair pink. So what about the Eighties? Is this a fair picture of an Eighties couple or not? If not, why not?

A 1980s Couple

They are passionate believers in vegetarianism and regard people who eat meat as worse than criminals. (In their view, egg-eaters are really no better, as eggs are baby chickens.)

I suspect, though, that part of them is sometimes dying for a nice big juicy steak.

They are suspicious of all frozen food, despise any product that contains additives, wholly disapprove of white bread, and reckon that consumers of 'poisonous' white sugar will nearly all die young.

I hope they're wrong.

They view things like whaling and seal-hunting with disgust, and find vivisection extremely distasteful. They are fierce opponents of fox-hunting and are also opposed to women accepting presents of fur-coats.

I dread to think what their views would be on those cosmetic firms which try out their products on poor, defenceless little rabbits.

For them, zoos are degrading; they refuse to accept that they serve any useful purpose whatsoever. On the other hand, they welcome the growth of wild-life parks and reserves.

I can't make up my mind where I stand on this. They know their own minds, as usual.

They feel strongly that most doctors are little better than drug-pushers, and are convinced that acupuncture is the medicine of the future.

I suppose they might have a point there.

They recommend natural childbirth for all mothers-to-be and reject the need for such things as induction, drips and painkillers, except in special circumstances.

I expect one or two of you mothers would disagree.

They are in favour of abortion being freely available, and I guess you don't need me to tell you their feelings on women's equality. They are against corporal punishment of any kind - I would imagine their attitude towards capital punishment is fairly predictable - and is pro voluntary euthanasia.

They take a keen interest in the fortunes of the Third World, and doubt whether any of the Western powers really care.

They are supporters of conservation in its broadest sense, back all tree-planting projects, and strongly approve of recycling waste paper and other rubbish.

I presume most people would share that particular viewpoint.

They would like to see solar energy taken more seriously and are fiercely anti-nuclear power.

My own feeling is that solar energy in Britain is rather a contradiction in terms.

They are under the impression that all politicians are either gangsters or fools.

I must admit, I'm afraid I'm tempted to agree.

They advocate prisons without bars and are of the opinion that 99% of serious criminals are in need of psychiatric help.

To my mind, pleas of insanity have become suspiciously common.
They are **prepared to accept** that UFOs probably do exist, and they **have no time** for people who **dismiss** reincarnation **out of hand**.

It all **seems** a bit improbable **to me**.

They **adore** punk clothes, but **can't stand** the people. They **rate** Lennon above McCartney and are **great fans of** Stevie Wonder. **I've never understood** their **taste** in clothes or trusted their **judgement** when it comes to music.

**As far as they are concerned**, tobacco is an unspeakable evil, but they **support** the movement for the legalisation of soft drugs. They are also for restrictions regarding the sale of alcohol.

Me? **I don't mind** much about the drugs thing, but **I'm quite fond of** my old pipe and rather keen on my brandy after dinner.

They **consider** that marriage should be a loose arrangement that ensures security for children, but **maintain** — **insist** even - that one balanced parent is **preferable** to two who are always at each other's throats.

They're the sort of people who **believe in** the freedom of all people at all times, and **think** anyone with a different **point of view** must be crazy.

**I wouldn't have thought** that was a very liberal **approach**, but **never mind**. If you **ask me**, nobody's totally **open-minded**.

Oh yes, and they jog.

**OK**, so you may **see eye to eye with** them on some of those issues, but you should try being related to one of them, that's all!

### Practice

Here are some names we give to people who have quite definite attitudes, views of behaviour:

- a sadist
- b agnostic
- c racist
- d patriot
- e cynic
- f idealist
- g fatalist
- h romantic
- i optimist
- j nationalist
- k activist
- l atheist
- m pessimist
- n masochist
- o anarchist
- p perfectionist
- q disciplinarian
- r philanthropist
- s fanatic
- t realist
- u nonconformist

Now, who might say which of the following statements?

1. I don't believe in God.
2. I don't think I believe in God.
3. I don't believe that anyone really believes in anything.
4. Love makes the world go round.
5. Face facts: love doesn't make the world go round — the sun does.
6. Any player not on time for training will be fined £10 for every minute he's late.
7. Me, emigrate? You must be joking. It would break my heart.
8. I'm not a bad sort of person. I just happen to believe that my country is superior to and more important than any other.
9. **I'll concede** that 99.9% is a good examination result. I just want to know why you failed to get 100%.
10. Honestly, I've **nothing against** foreigners, as long as they don't come and live next door to me or try and marry my daughter.
11. What will be will be.
12. I don't know why you bother to talk about the next World Cup. There will probably have been a nuclear war by then.
13. It's no good just sitting and talking about social injustice. The time has come to do something about it.
14. We shall achieve our aims by any means available; if that includes bloodshed and suffering for innocent people, that's the way it'll have to be.
15 I ran fifty kilometres in the midday sun today. Every kilometre hurt more than the last, so I feel really good about it. It must have done me good.

16 You might not enjoy this, but I'm certainly going to enjoy watching you suffer.

17 What did those politicians, lawyers and priests ever do for me? We should all follow our own ideas on government, law and the church.

18 Just because you're losing 0-6, 0-6, 0-5 and 0-40 doesn't mean you're necessarily going to lose.

19 I don't care what they say — palace or not, royalty or not, hundredth anniversary or not, I am not going to wear a tie.

20 It's the moral duty of all of us to do what we can to reduce the amount of human suffering in the world. At least, that's the way I look at things.

21 I am convinced that we are capable of creating paradise here on earth.

Discuss or write answers to the following questions.
1 What is your attitude to the issues mentioned in 'A 1980s Couple'?
2 What is your opinion on a controversial issue in the news at the moment?

Act or write out short arguments between the pairs of people below, who are attacking each other's standpoints and attitudes. Start: The trouble with people like you is...

1 a vegetarian and a cattle farmer
2 a doctor and a teacher
3 a 'green' supporter and the director of a firm producing chemicals
4 a fourteen-year-old and an eighteen-year-old

Write part of your speech as a politician, in which you outline your views on defence spending, taxation, law and order and foreign policy.

Write in dialogue form the middle of an interview between a headmaster and a candidate for a job as a teacher. The questions are getting difficult. Start: So, Mr Brown, what is your attitude towards pupil power in schools? And how do you view the recent trend towards...?

Add here any other expressions about attitudes and beliefs as you meet them.
Thinking, wanting and knowing

Reading

In this excerpt from a Scandinavian film script, note the variations we have on the work *think*.
Read the script silently or act it out in threes, taking the parts of Haro, Leni and the director.

Scene 246 from 'Brakbordsma' (*Breakfast*) by Ingmar Pintman.

Leni stares into her coffee cup, contemplating her life in the bottom of it.

*Leni:* Can you picture us in ...?
She breaks off. Haro looks up from his paper; their eyes meet briefly.

*Leni:* Do you envisage us doing this for the rest of...?
Long pause. Haro is lost in thought, in a world of his own.

He gazes out of the window, reflecting on the chances they have missed.

*Leni:* I can't imagine anything any more that will break the routine of...

The camera passes over Haro's meditating face.

*Leni:* It's become impossible to visualise a time or place in which we won't...

Pause. Suddenly she collects her thoughts, pulls herself together.

*Leni:* How's breakfast?

Haro is not concentrating, pre-occupied with the falling snowflakes.

*Haro:* Cold. (Pause) Cold bacon.

Leni is dreaming of her childhood.

*Leni:* I wasn't aware you liked it hot.

Haro continues to speculate on what might have been.

*Haro:* I don't.

Long pause. They both have a lot on their mind.

*Haro:* If you weigh up both sides, balance the pros and cons, consider it from each angle, bear in mind every little detail, you begin to realize that the importance of hot bacon can be greatly exaggerated in one's mind.

Leni is inventing an excuse for not going with him this evening, making up a story on which to improvise later.

*Leni:* I was day-dreaming.

Pause. She has a sudden brainwave.

*Leni:* Suppose ... just suppose that there was another opportunity, another chance to...

*Haro:* I've been toying with the idea of cutting out the bacon ... at breakfast.

Pause.

*Leni:* This evening ... you know, this evening, I'm sorry, but I'm ...

*Haro:* I'm seriously thinking of doing without it.

The word is going over and over in Leni's brain until she whispers it, almost inaudibly.

*Leni:* That's just make-believe.

Haro pretends not to have heard.

*Haro:* I've come to a decision. (Pause) This conclusion I've reached ... it's that...

His mind begins to wander. She is trying to guess what is going on in his head.

*Haro:* I've discovered certain things about myself in the last few weeks, you see ... and I've decided...

He is suddenly miles away, his mind is a blank. (Pause) He tries again.

*Haro:* Yes, I've resolved ...
Leni thinks she understands; her mind is racing.

Haro: Made up my mind, you know ... I'm going to try sausages.

Leni: Why don't you sleep on it, think it over?

Haro: I never change my mind after breakfast. (Pause) On second thoughts,...

A flash of inspiration from Leni:

Leni: It strikes me that... they've been very foolish. Has it occurred to you that they might... reconsider?

She is confused.

Haro: What do you mean?

The camera tracks to the window and the falling snow.

Leni: Nothing.

Jigsaw Reading

Here are some comments made by two people at various times in their working life - when they were 16, 26, 36, 46 and 56. Unfortunately, they have become mixed up. Read them and try to decide at which age each was spoken. Notice how many feelings, desires, hopes and fears are expressed. Which paragraph do you identify with most? Which person do you envy less, feel more sorry for?

My twelfth job in ten years; it was the last thing I wanted.

All I've ever asked for is a bit of security. I'm determined to keep this job with Button and Co. longer than the others, so I'm keen to make a good impression.

I'd love to do something like teaching for a while, as a change from book-keeping. Teaching English to foreign students appeals to me; I really like the sound of it.

For two pins, I'd leave James, James and James and try a summer course at the Sunshine School of English just down the road. To be quite honest, I just don't feel like going into the office today - or ever again. I'm in the mood for something completely different.

I'm undecided as to whether to go on to university or leave school now. I feel quite tempted to start work in the real world, but on the other hand I'd quite like three years doing nothing very much and give myself time to make a choice of career. To tell the truth, I don't really fancy getting tied down to one profession just yet.

I'd rather not think about how many jobs I've had. I used to dream of making my way up to the top of some firm or other - a firm of accountants, perhaps. Instead, I've settled for odd jobs here and there, aimed for posts they didn't even consider me for, compromised left, right and centre and made do with what came my way. At times I would have given my right arm for

I suppose I'm resigned to being an accountant with J, J and J until I'm 65. I know it's too late to have regrets, but I do wish I had tried harder to make the break. I had every intention of doing so. There seemed to be so many options open once, so many alternatives to pick from, so many possibilities from which to choose. I recall how I flirted with journalism, how I
Thinking, wanting and knowing

I've just had my notice from Smith Bros. Ltd. I'm **dreading** having to look round for work again. I've **given up** being choosy. I'd be more than happy **just to** have any sort of job now. I'm desperate **to** find anything that's reasonable. I really **have no strong preference** any more.

**I can't wait** to leave school. **I'm dying to** start work. I mean to find a nice steady job in a well-established firm, and **intend** to work my way up from the bottom. I'm **anxious to** learn about all sides of the business, because I **hope to** be on the management side by the time I'm 40.

Well, I've **made a resolution** to leave the old firm within the next eighteen months. I'm **really looking forward to** a change. I couldn't face going on in accountancy until I retire. I **feel inclined** to try publishing; I've **got my eye on** a company just down the road. I have **half a mind to** write to them today.

I didn't really **plan** to get into accountancy. I'm **not sure** I **ever really wanted** to work in the world of business, but there it is, here I am. I suppose I was just **drawn** to it somehow, **attracted to** it like a magnet. I'm **going to give it** a few more years and then change. I rather **like the idea** of being a journalist; there is a newspaper office just down the road.

**Practice**

Rewrite the sentence given in each item four times, using each of the four words below it. For example:

I wouldn't like to be a millionaire.

- fancy
- hate
- pleasure
- last

I **wouldn't fancy being** a millionaire.
I **would hate to be** a millionaire.

**Being** a millionaire **would give me no pleasure at all.**
A millionaire **is the last thing I would want to be.**

1 I want to see him again very much,
forward / dying / wait / longing
2 I didn't intend to spend so long there,
planned / mean / planning / intention
3 I would like a holiday,
could / feel / mind / say no
4 I want to go to London on Saturday, not Sunday,
rather / prefer / preferable / preference
5 I don't really want to move away from the coast,
keen / reluctant / fancy / idea

Discuss or write the answer to this question.
How have your ideas, plans, feelings on the following subjects changed in the past five or ten years?

1 marriage
2 career
3 bringing up children (present or future)
4 money
Act or write conversations in which each of the people below is interviewed about their attitude to their work.

1. a young reporter recently taken on by a national newspaper
2. a worker on an assembly line
3. a pilot who has recently retired
4. a 45-year-old actor or actress who is past his or her best
5. an English teacher who's been teaching beginners for twenty-five years

Act or write out a conversation in which you discuss your holiday plans for next summer with two friends. See if you can agree on a holiday together, although you have very different ideas about what you would really like to do.

Write a goodbye note left by a runaway teenager for his parents.

Write, in dialogue form, a conversation which took place eighty years ago between a young man and his future father-in-law. The young man is trying to prove he will be a worthy husband for the other's daughter.

Add here any other words or expressions about thinking, wanting and knowing you may meet.
Readings

Here are some of the most common adjectives we use to describe the way we feel. Each one has a clue with it, to help you understand the mood, and to allow you to test yourself later. Some of the clues contain useful phrases about the weather. Have you ever had a year like this? Read on.

JAN
1. Another year gone, never to return. melancholic
   7. I suppose none of us is getting any younger. pensive
   10. To think nearly half the world is white with snow today. thoughtful
   16. The snow never seems as white as it used to be. nostalgic
   23. Oh, for the spring! full of longing
   31. Love Story on TV again tonight - super! sentimental

FEB
3. Another grey, cloudy day. bored
   7. Yet another day of drizzle and fog. miserable
   12. Heavy storms and a few sunny periods. moody
   13. Everyone got a rise in salary except me! resentful
   21. Why, oh why can't I seem to do things right? frustrated
   27. Another series of repeats on telly - oh no! fed up

MAR
4. Showers and rainbows. confused
   9. Umbrella or parasol? introspective
   14. Who am I? What am I? unsure of oneself
   24. Oh, sit still, will you! hopeful
   30. I think the rain's going to ease off. restful

APR
2. Sleet and biting winds. edgy
   5. Frosty mornings and icy roads. touchy
   8. You won't have any fingernails left. nervous
   9. OK, OK, don't bite my head off! irritable
   16. I heard a cuckoo. Did you hear it? alert
   25. The sun's coming out. cheerful

MAY
1. I think it's going to clear up. optimistic
   6. I've booked the holiday, so you can't say no. positive
   11. Just six more weeks and we'll be there. excited
   19. How about a ten-mile walk tomorrow? active
   22. Oh, I loved it! Adored it! Fantastic! enthusiastic
   26. You mean I've really won the Best Office Boy title? thrilled
Moods

JUN
5 UK Best Office Boy Competition? No problem! confident
13 Not a breath of wind. calm
16 A cool breeze, a cloudless sky. refreshed
19 I could lie here forever. relaxed
24 It's too hot to move. idle/lazy
28 Oh yes, this is the life! content

JUL
1 She smiled at me! She actually smiled at me! exhilarated
4 She said she'd come to dinner! elated
7 Now I know how the winner must have felt. triumphant
10 Jumping for joy! on top of the world
18 Pinch me to let me know I'm not dreaming. up in the clouds
28 Paradise must be like this. ecstatic

AUG
2 I know I don't know you, but you can still marry me! wild/rash
6 It's so close and heavy today, no air at all. weary
9 Sticky, thundery heat. drained
14 No energy, no emotion. exhausted
18 She's gone. I've got nothing left. empty
24 And it was going to be so good! disappointed

SEP
1 And she was so, so nice. heart-broken
4 That's the last holiday romance I'll ever have! disillusioned
11 The days are closing in. gloomy
18 It's going to be a long hard winter. depressed
24 Why bother? Why care? disheartened
29 I just don't understand. bewildered

OCT
2 An overcast sky. dejected
8 Why did you have to mention her name? easily upset
12 Therain'ssetinfortheday. distressed
17 Why are there no new people to meet? lonely
24 I don't want any new faces round here, thank you! hostile
30 Hailstorms and icy winds. bitter

NOV
1 Redundant, maybe? And thrown out of my flat? All alone. insecure
2 To be or not to be? suicidal
8 Nextdoor's music is really getting on my nerves! easily annoyed
15 It's brightening up. I don't believe it. astonished/amazed
16 It can't be true. I don't know what to say! overwhelmed
17 Come on, let's fly to Paris for breakfast. light-headed

DEC
6 Fancy dress parties and drinks round at our place. sociable
9 Snowball fights. playful
12 I must be the happiest man alive. over the moon
18 Skating on frozen puddles and falling over laughing. frivolous
24 Champagne bubbles and laughter. merry
31 I haven't done so badly this year after all! self-satisfied

You will notice that amongst the clues above you have the most common expressions relating to the weather - an important topic in England!
Moods

Practice

1 There are six people in the Bracewell family:
   grandfather, aged 86.
   Mr and Mrs Bracewell.
   Jenny, their 21-year-old daughter.
   Tommy, their 19-year-old son.
   Timmy, their 14-year-old son.

Imagine how each member of the family felt on these six days of a week at the end of last year. Write one or two adjectives to describe each person's mood per day.

   On Monday, Grandfather felt sad but pleased for his grandson.
   Mr Bracewell was depressed and easily annoyed.

Mon: Tommy announced he was going to Australia for a few years to find work.
Tues: It was the second anniversary of Grandmother's death.
Wed: Mrs Bracewell came back from a shopping spree during which she had bought half the local fashion store's stock.
Thur: Mr Bracewell admitted that he'd lost his job.
Fri: Timmy showed his (very bad) annual school report to the rest of the family.
Sat: Jenny announced that she was getting married.

2 Discuss or write the answer to this question.
   How do the items below affect your moods?

   1 the weather and temperature
   2 your health
   3 work
   4 the world situation
   5 the time of day or week or year?

3 Describe to a partner or in writing, in as much detail as you can, how you have been feeling over the past few days. Think in terms of hours, minutes, even seconds, rather than 24-hour periods.

4 Describe a typical year's weather in your country for someone who has never been there. Comment on each season and particular months.

5 Write an article with the title: 'People with stable temperaments are boring'.

   • Below you might like to note:

   1 other adjectives or expressions you meet which describe our moods.
   2 further words or expressions about the weather.
Attitudes and relationships

Reading

Read through the text below to check on some of the language we use to describe our feelings for other people — from adoring them to tolerating them to hating them.

Tim and Lenny can't stand each other. They loathe each other, hate the sight of each other. Lenny seems to envy Tim his stripes and Tim is envious of Lenny's spots.

We all have great respect for Leo; respect mingled with fear.

Sammy frightens everyone. Even Tim and Lenny keep out of his way, and Leo admits to being slightly afraid of him. The chickens are terrified of him and the rabbits are petrified; they nearly have a heart attack if you just go up behind them and hiss.

Clarence always seems to have a chip on his shoulder - as if he has a grudge against the whole animal kingdom. The others ignore him.

Everyone looks up to George.

Zoe and Pat are very close. They seem to enjoy each other's company and get on very well together. I suppose they have a lot in common, same taste in clothes etc, Penny, who has a love-hate relationship with Pat, is getting jealous, though.

Percy makes everyone feel a bit uneasy; none of us can really relax in his company. We all remember past pricks and so are wary of him.

Nobody trusts Charlie; they say you never know what he's thinking.

Dear Henry is amused by everything and everybody.

Everyone keeps their distance from Ronny.
Attitudes and relationships

Everyone **admires** hardworking Sarah. She **impressed** us all last autumn particularly.

Oswald is very **badly treated**. Everyone **looks down on** him; even wise old Orville regards him **with contempt**. The poor chap, he's developed quite an **inferiority complex**, just because he can't fly.

There's **general sympathy** for Harry. I'm not sure whether we **pity** him for his ugliness or **feel sorry** for him having to carry all that weight around.

We're all **very fond** of Donna, but she seems quite **indifferent** to us. (I get the feeling that she's only **in love with** herself, just sitting around all day singing protest songs about Love and Peace and things.) It's difficult to **get through to her**.

Gordon is **fascinated** by the butterflies, absolutely **captivated**. They seem to find him pretty **intriguing, too**.

To a man, we're all **bored stiff by, fed up with and sick to death of** Polly, who goes on all day about nothing in particular.

We **detest and despise** Valerie for giving us all a bad name.

Everybody **despairs of** Lou and his friends, throwing themselves off cliffs like that.

We **resent** Bruin's and Bunny's popularity with children; their dressing up in people's clothes is definitely **frowned on**.

Secretly, I think we all still miss Dudley.

**Practice**

Use each of the expressions below to say or write a true statement about the way you relate (or have related in the past) to people you know or to particular groups of people. You will need to add a preposition with each expression.

1 feel sorry 8 hate the sight
2 be terrified 9 have great respect
3 can't get through 10 be wary
4 get on well 11 have a lot in common
5 be fascinated 12 feel indifferent
6 be fed up 13 be very fond
7 look up 14 look down

*I've been in love with Carlos since we were children.*
Discuss or write the answers to these questions.

1. How did you feel towards the members of staff (individually) in your last school?
2. What are some of the problems that often occur between teenage children and their parents?
3. What problems can occur between management and workers in a big company?
4. 'Most divorces are avoidable.' Do you agree?

Write part of a letter to a friend, describing how a close friend and you have **fallen out**. Explain what **went wrong** and why. Say how you felt about it.

You are a lawyer in a divorce case. Write part of your final speech, explaining why, in this case, a divorce should (or should not) be granted.

Add any other words about relating to other people as you meet them.
Expressing oneself

Reading

Read this man's speech. See how soon you can tell what he is talking about. In it he includes over fifty variations on the words *say* and *speak*. See how many of them you can incorporate into your own use of English.

'Ladies and Gentlemen!
I hope you will excuse me for *butting into* your conversations in this way. I know nobody likes being *interrupted* at such a time, but I have been asked to *say a few words*, *make a speech* if you like, on this extra-special occasion. And may I say first what a pleasure and honour it is to have the opportunity to *address* you like this, this afternoon.
You know, ever since you first *hinted* to me that something of this sort might be on the cards, I have been *debating with myself* constantly as to how I could best *express* the *sentiments* I want to *convey* to you, here, this afternoon. And then when you actually *broke the news and announced* a date, I began to *consult* friends and acquaintances who have been in this position, *discussing* the subject with them *at length and in detail*.
I can *reveal* today, however, that the problems of *phrasing my message* have not been solved. I suppose if I were an actor, I could *recite* a relevant *speech* of Shakespeare's. Were I a priest, I might *preach* to you, but I fear it would be a poor *sermon*. As a politician, I could *read out* a prepared *statement* and then go on *repeating 'No comment'*. If you were a class of students, I might *give you a lecture*. Were you secretaries, I could *dictate* what I have to say. If we had more time, we could *chatter and gossip* together for hours. But you and I are none of these things, so I shall have to *put my message across* in more ordinary terms.
I suppose I could simply *declare* that this is one of the happiest days of my life and *claim* that I never thought I could be as happy as I am today. Or I could just state a few useless *facts and figures* and leave it at that. I could, on the other hand, *refer to* what great men — and women - have said or written on this theme, and just *quote* a few famous lines. I might also *mention* my own experience, reminisce a little, *recount a few anecdotes*, tell a few *stories* and make some significant *comment* on young people today.
Standing here, I can *assure* you, my main fear is not that I shall *'dry up' - I have already uttered* too many words on this *theme to be at a loss for words* now — but that I shall, in a rash moment, *blurt out* what I have to say, *gabble* away for a few seconds and leave too much *unsaid, unspoken*. Then again, while I stand here *thinking aloud, arguing* with myself, *contradicting* myself perhaps, you will no doubt be thinking, 'Why's the old man rambling on like this without getting to the point?' *Why doesn't he just come out with it?* You'll be saying, 'Spit it out!' I hear you cry.
Well, time marches on, and I can see that you have no need of *explanations or illustrations* from me; no *account* of my own life is required, no *descriptions or recommendations*. I shall not bother to sum up what I have said so far. All I should like to add on this — how shall I put it? - extra-special occasion is: *I hope you'll both be very happy.*

Dialogue

The items in italics on the next pages are what people actually say. Below each of the items in italics is a statement about the way in which that person is expressing him or herself. The key words are left out and are in the Key at the back of the book. Try to complete each statement. Then check your answers.
PART ONE

1 Hello. How are you doing? Nice to see you again. Haven't seen you for ages. How are you?
   He's simply ... an old friend; it's quite a warm, friendly. . . .

2 This is Francoise. She's over here -er - staying with me for a few weeks. She's from Paris.
   Now he's ... a third party to his friend - a normal sort of....

3 Look, would you like to join us? We're just going down the road to the Steakhouse for a bit of dinner.
   He's ... his friend to join them for dinner.
   (For some reason, I don't get as many ... as I used to.)

4 Well, er, that's very nice of you. Yes, I'd love to.
   She has ... the invitation; an informal ..., of course - nothing on paper.

5 Oh no, I've just remembered. I have to meet Harold - you remember Harold? - at eight, so I'd better not come with you. Thanks all the same.
   Oh dear, now she finds she has to ... the invitation, because of a prior arrangement.

6 Well, why don't we get together tomorrow, the three of us, and go for a picnic, something like that?
   He's ... a picnic tomorrow; a good ... in this weather.

7 Look, I'll pick you up at your place, so you won't have to get a bus.
   He's ... to pick her up in his car; a gentlemanly....

8 Well, er, I don't know, er, I mean, er, it's, er...
   She's clearly very ......., over every word like that. I wonder what could be behind her ...

9 Oh come on, you must come, really you must! We won't take no for an answer.
   He's ... that she comes with them tomorrow; he's very....

10 Well, all right then. Fine, OK.
    Ah, good, she's finally ... to go. Thank goodness.

11 Look, I'm sorry, but you won't pass this exam if you go on wasting time the way you have been these past few weeks.
    The teacher is ..., her student not to take things easy; a friendly ... this time — maybe next time it will be harsher.

12 If I were you, I'd try and read twenty pages every day; write one or two compositions a week, and spend some time every evening just going through your notes.
    Now she's ... him as to how he can make progress; but will he listen to her ...?
13 You're right. I'm sorry. I know I've let you down. I don't deserve to have a teacher like you. I really am dreadfully sorry.
   He's ... for not doing much work as he might have done; it sounds like a sincere ..., but it's easy to be ... when it suits you, isn't it?

14 Oh come on now. It'll be all right. You'll do well. I'm sure you'll pass as long as you keep your head.
   She's ... him now that he will pass.

15 James, things'll get better for you, I'm sure they will. Don't worry. Don't be upset.
   I do feel for you.
   Now she's .... with him, trying to ... him.
   She's certainly a very ... teacher, but I'm not so sure he deserves her .... Male students of thirty-five shouldn't need this sort of... .

16 Excuse me. Is this the customer service section here?
   She's ... as to whether she's in the right place; she's probably at the .... desk.

17 Well, look! I'm not satisfied with this jumper I got here last Saturday. I washed it once and you can see for yourself what's happened to it.
   She's ... about the garment she bought; the girl probably hears hundreds of... like this every day.

18 What do I want? I want my money back, of course. And I want it now!
   She's ... her money back; it sounds like a pretty forceful....

19 Look, if you don't give me that money this instant, I'll make life so uncomfortable for you that you'd never set foot in this store.
   Now she's ... the poor girl; that's quite a violent....

20 You, you stupid little girl, you're a fat lot of use!
   That's unfair, madam, if you don't mind my saying so. I just work here.
   Now she's ... the girl, who sounds rather offended. I'm not surprised. That was a nasty ...

21 Can I help to sort things out here? I'm the manager. We don't like to see our customers upset in any way - especially the young ladies and especially the beautiful ones - and especially the well-dressed, elegant ones.
   He's ... the woman on her appearance - a big ..., as she's over seventy.

22 So if you'd like to choose another jumper from our range, we'll happily exchange this one for it, even if the one you choose does cost more. All right?
   What he's ... sounds very fair - unless someone can come up with a better ....

23 Congratulations, Marlon. Marvellous performance. Best Hamlet I've seen. I don't know how you do it.
   They're ... the actor on his performance; they're offering/ giving him hearty....
24 Well, I'm very grateful. You're very kind. I appreciate that.
He's ... them for their kind words; he's offering /
giving them heartfelt....

25 Fantastic show. We were wondering - The way you expressed your - We thought
perhaps you might get us - Incredible performance! Er, any chance of some free
tickets for our friends?
Ah, it was all...; they were ...
him in order to get some free tickets.

PART TWO

26 Comrade Stalin was the finest leader we have ever produced. He did more for
our nation than any other. He deserves to be ... .
It's 1953, and Comrade Khrushchev is ...
Comrade Stalin; generous ... indeed.

27 Comrade Stalin was a criminal. No-one in the history of our great country has
done more to destroy
It's 1956 and Khrushchev is ... Stalin as a
criminal.

28 Right, now where were you? What were you doing? Who were you with? What
was his name?
This is an ... ; the police are ...
the suspect,... him about his activities at the
time of the crime.

29 Look, come off it, Dad. I'm twenty-one. Stop treating me as ifI was a baby!
Oh no, it wasn't a policeman; it was a father. The
daughter is ... that she's not a baby any more;
youthful....

30 Come on, tell me. You'll feel better once you've told me. Don't be shy.
She's ... her husband to tell her the
latest bit of gossip. He seems to need ... .

31 Do tell me. Really, you ought to. You've got to. Look, come on. Tell me, for
goodness' sake.
She's ... him to tell her now — as if it
was terribly ....

32 No, no. And, for the last time, no!
Oh dear, he has ... to tell her; a stubborn ... .

33 Oh please, Winston, please. Don't keep things from me - please!
Now she's ... with him, ... him to
tell her - on her knees perhaps.

34 Look, I won't tell anyone, not a soul. I won't really.
She's ... to be discreet; but will she keep her
... or break it?

35 Well, all right then. The thing is - and you mustn't mention a word ofthis to
anyone - the thing is, you know Tom's got this new secretary called Belinda?
Well....
Well, he's given in and is ... in her —
on this very ... matter; I suppose a husband
really should have ... in his wife, though,
shouldn't he?
Expressing oneself

36 I propose ... (What about the unemployed?) (How would you like to live on £38 a week?) (Give us back our jobs!) I propose ...
A few of the crowd are ... the politician.
Some ... are welcomed by politicians - it gives
them the chance to show how clever they are.

37 As I was saying, I propose to increase basic income tax along the following lines.
Ah, this politician has completely ...

38 It was all your fault. If you hadn't opened your big mouth, neither of us would be
in the mess we are in now.
It seems one man is ... the other for the
trouble he's in - it's not clear whether he's to ...
or not.

39 Yeah, OK. I realise that it wasn't so clever of me. I know I shouldn't have...
Ah, now he's ... that it wasn't the cleverest
thing to have done - an honest....

40 And there's something else, I'm afraid. Er - when I told you I'd written to the tax
people, well, I hadn't. I lied. The whole story was a lie.
Now he's going further, actually ... that he
had lied - quite a serious ..., really.

41 How could you? I mean, we agreed that the only way we were going to succeed
was if we were both completely honest with each other. And now this!
He's ... the other one now for what he did.
His eyes are ... and his voice full of... .

42 Oh, so you got ten per cent in the exam, did you? You genius! You must be so tired
after all the work you did for it!
He's ... his poor friend, ... of him,
... him as brothers do. Perhaps he's only joking,
though, simply ... the other boy's ....

43 I got 99% myself. Of course, I expected to do well. After all, I'm obviously the
brightest student in the class.
Now he's ... about how clever he is, the
little horror.

44 You only got so many because you cheated. I saw you looking at Sarah Nicholls'
paper, all the way through the exam.
Ah, now his friend's ... him of cheating -
quite a vicious ....

45 What do you mean? I didn't. I didn't do anything of the sort.
He's ... that he cheated - a fairly
forceful....

46 Look, for Heaven's sake, you two; try and behave like sixteen-year olds, not
six-year olds.
Their mother's ... both of them,...
them off quite firmly.

47 Now get upstairs, both of you. And get that mess tidied up in your room. Go on,
get upstairs.
Now she's ... them upstairs to clean up
their rooms.
Expressing oneself

48 It is my considered opinion that the defendant has not got one ounce of decent human feeling in his whole body ...
    The judge is ... the defendant as 'a pretty nasty piece of work'. A strong ..., don't you think?

49 Please excuse me, your Lordship, but could I possibly have a quick word with you?
    The clerk is ... a moment of the judge's time
    - a very polite ....

50 It's just that, you won't forget, will you, that your wife asked you to pick up a few things from the supermarket on your way home, and it's very nearly quarter past five, so...
    He's ... the judge about certain other duties he has to perform - a timely ....

Practice

Describe how you used to get on with members of your family when you were younger.

Write or relate two conversations you have heard in which people were being particularly kind, unkind or rude to each other.

Compare English and your language. Write or discuss the ways in which people seem to express their feelings towards each other in each language.

Write on one of the following topics.

1 A letter apologising to a friend following the big row you had last week and how rude you were to him or her.
2 'People don't really mean most of the things they say.' How far do you think this is true?

Add any other words about how we express ourselves as you meet them.
Reacting to events

Reading

Read through the following texts, noting the rather strong idiomatic language we can use to describe our reactions to slightly unusual events.

Some moments from our family scrap-book, when we were all:

surprised.

... We all got the shock of our lives last Christmas. We were sitting round the fire, forcing third helpings of Christmas cake into our mouths, when the doorbell rang. It made everybody jump. Auntie Jane nearly jumped out of her skin. I was pretty startled myself. I must admit. Anyway, there at the door — believe it or not - was Uncle Mac, with an armful of presents. (It was the first time in living memory that he had ever given anything to anybody.) Everyone caught their breath when they saw him. No-one could really believe their eyes. Poor Aunt Flossie actually fainted, and Uncle Bill kept blinking, as if he had seen a ghost. And Granny, who had been talking non-stop since breakfast, was absolutely speechless. I thought her eyes were going to pop out of her head. I reckon you could have knocked all of us over with a feather.

emotional.

... I looked across and saw that tears were already trickling down Mum's cheeks. I must confess a lump had come to my throat, and I was having to swallow hard. When the priest started speaking, Julia burst out crying, and that was the signal for Mum to break down; she was completely overcome. By this time tears were rolling down several faces - including Dad's - and I had a horrible feeling that I was going to burst into tears. The priest's few words were very touching; I think he was almost moved to tears himself. I'm not surprised. They made such a lovely couple and Maggie looked great in white.

angry.

... I think it was Dad's side of the family that started it, when Uncle Mac started calling Uncle Bill names. Auntie Jane took offence immediately and then Granny joined in. She made Aunt Flossie lose her temper and soon after that Dad blew his top. That led to Mum going berserk — I've never seen her so livid. It wasn't long before Maggie, for some reason, started insulting Uncle Tom and then it was his turn to see red; he really went mad — 'furious' isn't the word for it. It was about then that Grandad, who had obviously been seething for some time, hit the roof. Things quietened down a bit after that and Granny dealt the next hand of cards.

afraid.

... Well, naturally most of us were scared stiff. Only Maggie kept cool throughout. Mum went as white as a sheet and even Dad panicked a bit. Auntie Jane's hair stood on end and Uncle Bill ran a mile. I must confess that my heart missed a beat or two. I mean, it's not every day that a tax inspector comes to your front door, is it? All the time he was with us, Uncle Mac was twitching as if he had an army of ants inside his shirt collar. Whenever the phrase 'failure to declare earned income'
Reacting to events

came up, Aunt Flossie winced and Mac's hand started shaking so much he couldn't light his pipe. It was obvious that Granny was trembling too when she tried to pick her cup of tea up — three times. Everyone shuddered visibly when the man said he would be back - everyone except Maggie, that is. She didn't flinch once, didn't turn a hair. She's either a very good actress or extremely honest.

embarrassed.

... I could see that Julia was dying of embarrassment - not surprisingly, in the circumstances. I bet the incident is still on her conscience. Anyway, I could feel that I was blushing, and the other chap was as red as a beetroot. Julia had a terribly guilty look in her eye, or rather, she had guilt written all over her face. She started stammering something about feeling tired and having come up for a rest. I didn't know where to put myself, I can tell you. I've never felt so small in all my life; about two foot tall, that's how I felt. I stood there for a few seconds hoping a hole would open up in the floor and swallow me. In the end I just gulped and backed out of the room.

amused.

... Well, everyone burst out laughing, of course. Uncle Bill laughed his head off, and Auntie Jane nearly died laughing. And you should have seen Granny; she was in hystericis. Even Uncle Mac couldn't help laughing when he realized what the cause of their laughter was. The vicar was the only one who didn't see the funny side of things; completely straight-faced, stony-faced he was. Granny was still hysterical long after Uncle Mac had turned round, chuckling to himself, and put the matter straight.

practice

Choose the correct word to complete each sentence.

1 I couldn't ... my ears when they told me.
   a hear b believe c feel d accept
2 The Prime Minister was ... with rage.
   a wordless b silent c shivering d speechless
3 Poor girl, there were ... running down her face.
   a tears b lumps c shudders d cuts
4 I must admit, I nearly ... my sides laughing.
   a cut b broke c split d swallowed
5 I can tell you, my heart nearly skipped a ....
   a beat b moment c break d turn
6 Everyone ... out laughing.
   a broke b burst c jumped d popped
7 They had joy ... all over their faces.
   a placed b arranged c poured d written
8 My ... stood on end when I saw him.
   a hair b head c heart d eyes

After a little thought, tell a partner or write about a memorably embarrassing, frightening or funny experience you have had.

Tell your partner or write the plot of a horror film you have enjoyed and still remember, or a comedy that amused you, or a thriller that kept you on the edge of your seat. Tell them about how you felt while you were watching it.
4 Write, for your college or company magazine, a review of a ghost story you have read.

- Add any other words about our reactions to events as you meet them.
Sounds people make

Reading

In the following passages, you will meet about fifty of the noises we humans make, many of them without producing words. Read the passages and then do the exercises that follow.

Read the passage and decide whose thoughts are being described.

I'm awake, lying here moaning, and nothing's happening at all. Oh well, better start crying properly. Still no reaction. Right, they've asked for it. Here we go with a real scream. Ah, now I hear something next door. Must go on sobbing, so they realise it's serious. Here she comes, muttering to herself. Why is it always her? Never him? Ah, a bottle. Excuse me, but it's difficult to suck a bottle without making sucking noises, you know. Oh no, I've got hiccups again. Sometimes I seem to spend half my day hiccupping. Over the shoulder I go again. Oh dear, a burp. Pardon. Back to bed. Ah, I like it when she hums that song to me. Oh dear, we're both yawning. Time to sleep again. I can hear him snoring next door. 'Not a murmur now,' she says to me, the same as always. There's no need to sigh like that, you know. You were a baby once.

It's been a hard day's night, as they used to say. My boss made my life hell today. Read the passage and find out what my job is.

I've never known a boss like him; you hardly ever hear him talking normally. He starts as soon as he comes into the office in the morning. If I'm two minutes late, he starts shouting at me. And you should hear him on the phone, yelling at some poor junior. When he asks you to do something, he just barks — like a fierce dog. And when he finds a mistake in your work, he roars like a lion. When someone asks him a question, he nearly always just grunts, like that. He'll sit for hours grumbling about the weather, the business, his colleagues, the market. And he will mutter! Half the time you can't understand a word he's saying. The worst thing is his dictation. He just mumbles all the way through the letter; I have to guess every other word. Then he bites my head off when I've written something he didn't want. I just start stammering and stuttering, and get out of the room as soon as possible.

The third group of noises come from a theatre. Read the text and find out what is happening on stage.

You can hear the audience whispering excitedly. Some of them are clearing their throats. Could they be nervous? Something's happening. The audience are clapping, polite applause at the moment. Two of the audience are being invited onto the stage. The rest of them are cheering and calling out things. Now something is happening on stage; you could hear a pin drop. The two members of the audience are doing exactly what they are told and the chairs they are sitting on are beginning to rise into the air. The audience are gasping. Oh dear, what's happened? They've suddenly fallen to the ground and look most upset. The audience are booing loudly. It hasn't worked. Now they're whistling. The whistling has changed to hissing, but there's nobody on stage except the two members of the audience. Now they're chanting that they want their money back. The manager's coming out on stage. Listen to them groaning.
The fourth group of sounds comes from when I was ill last week. I really wasn't well at all. Find out what was wrong with me.

It started on Monday. I really wasn't well at all. I was sniffing all day. On Tuesday I hardly stopped blowing my nose and sneezing. By Wednesday I had a pretty bad cough. I tried gargling with salt water but it didn't seem to do much good. If I had to go upstairs, I'd reach the top stair panting like a thirsty dog, and I'd still be wheezing five or ten minutes later. By Friday I'd lost my voice almost completely. I was croaking like a frog all day at the office.

The fifth group of sound-words, shows how different people reacted to the same joke.

Lady Thackeray-Smythe laughed politely. Her husband was chuckling minutes afterwards. A class of schoolgirls giggled. A class of schoolboys sniggered. An American TV audience shrieked and howled with laughter. Lady Thackeray-Smythe's maid tittered. Billy Bloggs laughed like a drain.

**Practice**

To see how many of these words you have remembered, arrange the verbs in each of the columns below according to how loud they normally are: the loudest number 1, the softest number 6. Then write a sentence of your own for each verb to show what it means, or discuss your lists with a partner.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>mutter</th>
<th>hum</th>
<th>hiss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sigh</td>
<td>groan</td>
<td>pant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scream</td>
<td>boo</td>
<td>howl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yell</td>
<td>whisper</td>
<td>chuckle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whistle</td>
<td>roar</td>
<td>sob</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gasp</td>
<td>mumble</td>
<td>sniff</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What noises made by other people annoy you most, and in what situations? If you think of other noises which have not been mentioned in this unit, try to find the words for them in a dictionary and write them in the space provided for your notes at the end of the unit. For example, I hate the sound of people making the bones in their fingers click and people singing out of tune.

List the sounds you would expect to hear in the situations below.

1. in a football stadium on a Saturday afternoon
2. on a crowded beach in summer
3. in the maternity ward of a hospital during the evening
4. at the scene of a major disaster

Write or act out your commentary for Radio South as you report on the tour of your town by members of the British royal family.

Write the middle paragraph of an article for the Daily Sensation. Describe the scene outside the tower block in which a terrorist bomb has just gone off.

Add any other words describing the noises we make.
Gesture, mannerism and body language

Picture story

Look at the picture story below and notice the way we describe the two cats’ gestures. Then cover the words and see if you can recall them.

He's licking his lips.  
He's staring (leering) at her.  
He's winking at her.  
He's raising his eyebrows, pointing at a glass.

She's smiling, grinning.  
She's frowning, maybe scowling.  
She's pouting.  
She's shrugging her shoulders, grimacing, making (pulling) a face.
Gesture, mannerism and body language

He's nodding.  She's shaking her head.

He's blowing her a kiss.  She's sneering.

He's beckoning to her.  She's poking her tongue out at him.

He's scratching his head.  She's waving (goodbye).

Practice 1

Check that you know the meaning of each of the verbs below. They all describe different ways of looking. Then choose the appropriate verb to complete each sentence. Finally, make sure you understand the other words and phrases in bold print in the sentences.

glanced gazed peeped peered stared

1. He... intently at the piece of paper in front of him, **wringing his hands** in despair.
2. He **stretched to his full height** and... over the wall to see what Lady Thackeray-Smythe's daughter was doing.
3. We... through the fog, **blinking**, trying to **catch a glimpse of** a moving light.
4. She stopped **fidgeting and fiddling** with her dress. She just sat, absolutely still, and... out of the window, miles away, just occasionally **pursing her lips**, then **biting** them hard.
5. The referee... at his watch again, **made a sign** to the linesmen, then **blew the final whistle**.
Hungry? Thirsty? Feel like a cigarette? Before you do anything, just connect the two halves of these sentences correctly. To do this, decide which verbs go with which objects.

1 He chewed **a** smoke-rings.
2 She licked **b** his cigar.
3 He puffed **c** the sweets to make them last longer.
4 She nibbled **d** the tablets so as not to have to taste them.
5 He sipped **e** the tough meat before digesting it.
6 She swallowed **f** the chocolate biscuits to avoid eating too many.
7 He blew **g** the ice-cream and then her lips.
8 She sucked **h** the brandy.

Now match the two halves of this group of sentences.

1 My stomach was rumbling **a** so I scratched it.
2 We breathed in deeply **b** like a dribbling baby.
3 My teeth were chattering **c** and tossing and turning all night.
4 When the meal arrived, the dog started **d** and my mouth was watering.
5 I was sweating (perspiring) **e** and then exhaled fully.
6 My heart began to beat faster **f** and I was shivering.
7 My arm was itching **g** and my blood pressure went up.

**Reading**

Here is a selection of verbs concerned with the physical contact people can have. Read through the two short texts and then do the exercise that follows.

1 When I was a boy, I couldn't stand:
   - being **tickled** on the soles of my feet.
   - being **patted** on the head by my parents' friends and told I'd grown.
   - being **smacked** by my father for something I hadn't done.
   - **having my hair pulled and my ear flicked** by a sadistic teacher of ours.
   - being **scratched** (on the cheek, arm, back, leg) by the girls in the class above.
   - being **pinched**.
   - being **kicked and stamped on**, **having my fingers trodden on** and my face stepped on in the annual Girls v Boys football match.
   - **having my hair stroked** by my grandma, as if I was a cat. They were terrible like that, our family, always **caressing** each other. I never understood the need they had **to touch** people - most embarrassing I found it.

2 An interview with a boxer:

Well, half the time he was just **slapping** me, with the open glove; that's illegal, you know - and he **poked** me in the eye several times with his thumb - it was awful - **pushing** and **shoving** me he was; he even tried to **wrestle** with me - **punches**? He can't **punch**. He **tapped** me, that's all he did - he hardly **touched** me with a proper blow - when he **knocked me out**? Let me tell you, he didn't really hit me even then, not properly - he **butted** me with his head, like the bull he is - next time I'll knock **him out** in the first round, believe me.

Now use the words in the text to describe what is going on in the playground of a very bad school.
Gesture, mannerism and body language

Practice 2

1 The verbs on the right are in the wrong order. Decide which to use to complete each of sentences 1 — 6.

1 The freed hostages ... their family and friends.
2 The US President... the Prime Minister.
3 I... my mother-in-law on the cheek.
4 Charles ... her hand reassuringly as they stepped forward together to the altar.
5 The Pope ... the President.
6 Jack and Jill... each other to keep warm.

2 If you are working alone, write a paragraph about the signs and gestures used in your country. If you can, compare them with the signs and gestures used for similar purposes in other countries. If you are working in class, demonstrate and discuss the signs and gestures we make to express ourselves. In an international class, you may be surprised to discover how much body language varies from country to country.

3 Write or act out a conversation with a friend about one of the topics below.

1 how lovely and peaceful the park was last Sunday afternoon
2 how horrible the station was during the rush-hour on your way home this evening
3 how unpleasant a bar was at closing time last Saturday night
4 how moving it was to see some hostages reunited with their families

4 Write the page from your diary in which you describe the candidates' behaviour as you were all waiting to be called in for your oral exam. Begin: \textit{There were five of us in the room...}

Add here any other words about body language, mannerisms and gestures that you may meet.
Reading

Look carefully at the picture and read the text below it. Note how we describe the different positions the people are in. Then identify the people in the picture from what they say.

When England won the World Cup Final, I was ...
A sprawled on the floor, lying half on my stomach and half on my side, knees bent and with my feet in the air, one hand propping up my chin.
B standing on tiptoe, hands behind my back, chest out, chin up, shoulders back, stomach in.
C perched on the arm of the settee, my legs dangling over the side, with the cat curled up on my lap.
Posture and movement

D crouching, leaning back against the wall, arms folded and swaying from side to side as the play moved from end to end.

E standing, feet apart, hands in pockets, stooping a bit and twisting my neck to see the screen.

F kneeling with my head bowed, hands on hips, waiting for the stupid match to finish.

G sitting forward with hunched shoulders and arched back, my elbows resting on my thighs and my hands clasped in front of me.

H sitting astride a chair, arms outstretched, rocking to and fro.

I reclining on the settee, legs crossed, head back, fast asleep.

2 Read the text illustrating people's movements from one place to another. The verbs are in a column on the left, so afterwards you can test yourself by covering the left column.

I remember .... Do you?

skipping for hours in the back yard, with a worn-out rope,
hopping races with one leg tied behind us,
rolling down those slippery slopes, getting covered in mud.
racing home after school as fast as we could,
stumbling over the kerb,
falling headlong on our knees, then hobbling like wounded soldiers, pretending we had broken our legs, then rushing upstairs to be first in the bath.
skating in the winter,
sliding gracefully to the middle of the pond, then crashing into someone.
climbing Farmer Staple's apple trees,
swinging on the branches,
clawming over hedges,
crawling through bushes.
sliding down the bannisters when our parents were out,
bouncing up and down on their bed as if it was a trampoline,
tiptoeing downstairs early Christmas morning to see the presents underneath the tree, then creeping back upstairs, so as not to be heard.

3 In this report of a football match, the verbs have been lifted out of the text and placed on the right. Read the text, guessing the meaning of the verbs that have been left out. Check that you can complete each sentence correctly and then test yourself by covering the right-hand column and trying to complete the text without its help.

Match Report

They looked superb as they ... on to the field, battalions of green and orange. After only five minutes, however, the United number 9 ... to head the ball, ... with a goal-post and ... off the pitch with blood pouring from his forehead. A few minutes later, their number 8, who had done too much pre-match ..., was ... towards the goal-line when he ... with cramp. He had just managed to ... to the touch-line before the number 7 ... into a corner flag and ... flat on his back. The City number 10 went next, ... over the United goalkeeper and doing a ... into the net. The United number 9 ... back on, suffering from concussion, just before half-time, but he was 

| skipping | for hours in the back yard, with a worn-out rope, |
| hopping | races with one leg tied behind us, |
| rolling | down those slippery slopes, getting covered in mud. |
| racing | home after school as fast as we could, |
| stumbling | over the kerb, |
| falling headlong | on our knees, then |
| hobbling | hobbling like wounded soldiers, pretending we had broken our legs, then |
| rushing | rushing upstairs to be first in the bath. |
| skating | skating in the winter, |
| sliding | gracefully to the middle of the pond, then |
| crashing | crashing into someone. |
| climbing | Farmer Staple's apple trees, |
| swinging | on the branches, |
| clambering | over hedges. |
| crawling | crawling through bushes. |
| sliding | sliding down the bannisters when our parents were out, |
| bouncing | bouncing up and down on their bed as if it was a trampoline, |
| tiptoeing | tiptoeing downstairs early Christmas morning to see the presents underneath the tree, then |
| creeping | creeping back upstairs, so as not to be heard. |
| trotted | |
| dived. | |
| collided, staggered | |
| jogging, | |
| galloping, collapsed | |
| limp | |
| bumped | |
| fell | |
| tripping, somersault | |
| wandered | |
... off again.
At half-time, a streaker, ... on to the pitch. Five old ladies, ... up and down. Ten policemen, ... after him and ... him for five minutes or so, until he ... over a barrier and ... in the crowd.
After 63 minutes, the 43-year-old City winger ... towards the United goal. Up went the ball. The number 9 ... and thought he was going to ... like a bird towards it. Instead, he ... into the mud like a champion freestyle swimmer starting a race, not noticing that the opposing number 5 had accidentally ... on his right boot. The weary referee ... towards the scene of the accident and gave a penalty. Immediately eight orange figures ... on top of him and he ... to the ground.
Five minutes later, the City number 8 ... forward to take the penalty but while ... up to the ball he ... on a patch of ice. About then, hundreds of spectators ... on to the field. The United number 5 was ... and ... to the ground. The referee finally ... his way out of the crowd and ... off like a defeated general leaving the battlefield, never to ... .
It was just another Saturday afternoon.

Practice

1 Write about or discuss the topics below.
   1 the moments in sport that excite you the most (as a spectator)
   2 the series of instructions that you, as a keep-fit instructor, give your class as they do a particular exercise
   3 the radio commentary you give as people of all ages, shapes and sizes cross the finishing line in a charity marathon race
   4 the way people sit, move and react in an office on Monday morning at nine, compared with the way they sit, move and react on Friday afternoon at four.

2 Write a paragraph from your short story, describing a nightmare in which you were being chased.

3 Write a section of the film script for the most action-packed scene you can remember seeing in the cinema.

4 Write part of a letter to a newspaper complaining about some of the ridiculous things you or a relative of yours were forced to do on an organised sporting holiday.

Have you stood, sat or moved in any other way in your life? Can you think of any other ways in which people move without the aid of animals or vehicles? If so, write the appropriate words or expressions here.
Actions and activities

Reading

In this section we look at a series of everyday, non-technical actions. Read the texts.

1 Dear Cinderella,
Your jobs for tonight:
sweep the chimney, scrub the floors,
beat the carpets, hoover the stairs,
dust the furniture, polish the silver,
make the beds, change the sheets,
tidy the house, dig the garden,
clean out the fireplace, empty the rubbish,
wash our underwear, mend the socks,
darn the shirts, iron the laundry,
cook the supper, do the washing-up,
dry the dishes, put them away.
Don't wait up for us. We might be late home.

The Ugly Sisters

2 Interior decorating

It was my first go at decorating. Everything started well enough. Scraping the old wall-paper off was great fun and didn't take us long because we were able to peel off quite big strips. What did take a long time was rubbing with sandpaper the walls to be painted and papered. Our walls were so smooth in the end that Dad went round scratching them to make sure the paint would go on all right. He was a great organizer, Dad. Throughout the day he gave us useful tips like: 'Just dip your brush in the paint' and 'Don't squeeze out the paint from the brush before you apply it' and 'Just dab the paper with a wet sponge'. He also made us wipe each brush when we'd finished with it, then soak it in white spirit, wash it in soapy water and finally rinse it under a tap. A real perfectionist he was.

There was great excitement late in the morning when we started unwrapping the rolls of wallpaper and unpacking the tins of paint. I got the job of shaking all the tins, levering them open and stirring the paint. Meanwhile Uncle Mac and Grandad were mixing the paste, unrolling the paper and spreading the paste on the back. I watched admiringly as they folded the paper, carried it to the wall, hung it delicately (with the two ends stuck lightly together) from the top, then pressed down gently and smoothed out the lumps and bumps. I was terribly impressed.

It's difficult to say when exactly things started to go wrong. I think it was while I was dragging some of the rubbish downstairs that Uncle Jack started flicking his brush at Uncle Mac because he wouldn't let him have the stepladder. I got back in time to see Uncle Mac drop the ladder and fling a dirty cloth at Jack. Jack picked it up and threw it back. Then it got out of hand. Grandad grabbed a brush and tossed it straight at Uncle Bill, who went over and tipped a bucket of paste all over Grandad's back. Grandad then seized the empty bucket and stuck it on Bill's head. Uncle Mac came and poured a bucket of cold water over Dad's head. Dad snatched a brush from my hand and scrawled some rude words on the paper that Mac had...
just put up. Not satisfied, he went over and hurled a half-full tin of paint at the same wall. Still not satisfied, he climbed up the ladder, knocking over the other brushes and spilling another pot of paint as he went, tugged at the paper on the only remaining clean wall and tore it into shreds as it came away in his hands.

After that, things went from bad to worse.

A Golf Lesson

Right! Now, place the tee in the ground - that thing in your left hand - yes, push it down a bit more - no, pull it out a bit - no, put it back in --ow, just press it into the ground - go on, just slide it in - stop! Good. Very good. Right now, rest the ball on the tee - try again - and again. Good. Well done. Fantastic. Now, here's your club - take it in your left hand - no, your left hand - hold it quite firmly - no, don't grip it like that - let go of it - just grasp it like this, not too firmly - relax. Wonderful. Right, now wrap the fingers of your right hand round here - can you tuck your scarf into your jacket? We don't really want that round the club, do we - good, well done. Now move your hands backwards and forwards a little - wiggle your fingers a bit - relax. Right, stand here and bring the club back over your shoulder - no, the other shoulder - come on, swing it back, relax, twirl it round a bit - now, in a moment, bring it down fast and try to hit the ball right here in the middle. Try and strike it just - ouch! Yes, try and wait until I've taken my hand away next time - right, better insert the tee again - it's over there - good. Pop the ball on the tee. Good. Get hold of the club again. Good. Now, don't lift your head - raise your right elbow a fraction - keep your eye on the ball - right now, go! - O.K., well, you go and fetch the club from those bushes and I'll try and replace this piece of grass.'

Notes

You might like to add some more similar verbs here, but remember that many further action words appear in other sections.

Remember, too, that as soon as you have the name of a tool in English, hammer, screw, measure etc., you probably have a perfectly good verb as well: to hammer, to screw, to measure.

Practice

[1] Write or give oral instructions to a partner on how to do the following things.

1 put up wallpaper
2 put an electrical plug on a lead
3 serve in tennis
4 ski
5 bowl a ball in ten-pin bowling
6 shave or make up

[2] Write or tell your partner how easy it was for you to do the following things yesterday.

1 plant those seeds in your garden
2 clean out the fireplace
3 get your car started
4 make a desk for yourself
5 paint the top floor windows
6 clear the drains

[3] Discuss or write about the jobs around the house that you really hate doing.
Actions and activities

Write the part of a letter to a friend in which you describe how your try to lay some concrete, or build a little garden shed, or make yourself a new summer dress, but it all went disastrously wrong.

You have just produced a new tube of super-glue that you are about to market. Write the instructions for use that you will put on the packet.

Add any other words about other actions and activities as you meet them.
The universe

Quiz

True or false? Decide whether you agree with these statements or not. The answers are printed below the quiz.

1 Our galaxy is called the Milky Bar.
2 Our solar system has nine principal planets.
3 Earth is thought to have the highest density of all the planets.
4 A constellation is another word for star.
5 A meteor is sometimes known as a shooting star.
6 Meteorites can be bigger than meteors.
7 Asteroids are orbiting rocks found between Mars and Jupiter.
8 An astrologer would know more about the surface of Venus than an astronomer.
9 Halley's Comet was expected to appear in the 1990's.
10 UFO stands for unidentified flying object.
11 Pluto was first discovered during the twentieth century.
12 Saturn is further from the Sun than Uranus.
13 Mercury is the hottest planet.
14 Neptune is the nearest planet to the Sun.
15 A light year is nearly six thousand million miles.

Answers: 1 No, The Milky Way 2 Yes 3 Yes 4 No, a group or cluster of stars 5 Yes 6 Yes 7 Yes 8 No, the other way round 9 No. As expected, it arrived in the 1980s 10 Yes 11 Yes 12 No 13 Yes 14 No, Mercury 15 No, nearly six million million miles

Practice

[1] Write or discuss the answers to these questions.

1 How much do you know about each of the planets in our system?
2 How far do you think man will get in space discovery in the next hundred years?
3 Do we really need to know what other planets and systems are like?

[2] You are an astronaut reporting back to earth from outer space. Describe what you can see as you float through space.

[3] Write part of a letter to a newspaper in which you argue space travel is (not) a waste of time and money.

• Add any other words or expressions about the universe in the space provided.
Physical geography

Game

There follows a selection of words describing a range of geographical features. Read each set of notes and see if you can guess which country is being described. The answers are given below.

1 - a peninsula bounded by a large mountain range in the North - a wide plateau extending to the ocean in the South — unpredictable monsoon climate - population (approximately 720,000,000) concentrated in the northern plains -

2 — enormous forest areas in the interior - coastal mountains in the West - numerous islands off the north coast - lowlands in the North - continental climate, severe inland, more moderate by the sea - total area: 3,851,809 square miles —

3 — a wide variety of land and climate — a huge river basin in the North - thickly forested - a vast plateau in the South - densely populated in coastal belt to the East - relatively underdeveloped in central areas beyond the highlands in the South-East — lies on the Equator -

4 - consists of four main islands — mountainous and hilly - many active volcanoes - subject to earthquakes, typhoons and tidal waves - extends through many degrees of latitude - the climate, therefore, is very diverse -

5 - located round the mouth of the Rhine and opposite the Thames estuary - a long coastline - most of the country flat and low-lying - large areas in the West and North below sea level - subject to floods - complex network of canals -

6 - mountainous with numerous lakes — varied climate according to altitude, ranging from tropical to temperate to cold - highest point over 18,000 feet (nearly 6,000 metres) - desert in the West - half of the country lies inside the Tropic of Cancer -

7 - to the south the southern slopes of a gigantic mountain chain - tropical forests and jungle - highest peak 8,845 metres - fertile valleys for agriculture in central zone -

8 — most highly developed country in its continent - rich in mineral deposits and other natural resources - large industrialised urban areas round coasts - rural in the interior - rich vegetation, good irrigation -

Answers: 1 India  2 Canada  3 Brazil  4 Japan  5 Holland  6 Mexico  7 Nepal  8 South Africa

Note the following rather tricky uses of the words north, south, east, west and the more general terms northern, southern, eastern, western.

| The South of France | southern France |
| South Africa (a country) | southern Africa (a region) |
| The North Pole | the southern hemisphere |
| West Berlin | western Europe |
| East Germany | eastern culture |
| South-EastAsia | southern Europe |
| South America | the southern States of America |
| South/North Korea | Northern Ireland |
| the south bank of the river | Eastern block countries |
Practice

Make or find an outline map of your country or a country you know well and describe its **physical geography**, drawing in the key features.

Write or discuss the answers to the following questions.

1. Which country or countries might you choose to live in if you had to emigrate? Give the reasons for your choice.
2. What influence can a country's physical geography have on the lifestyle, standard of living and quality of life of the population?
3. Write out a page or two from the diary you kept during your solo flight around the world.

Write the opening of your speech at a conservationist 'Friends of the Earth' meeting, complaining about the ways in which man is interfering with and destroying his natural environment.

If your country couldn't be well described using the words and phrases given in this section, add any others you would need below.
The plant world

Reading

Read through these two pieces of homework, noting some of nature's key words.

20.4.89 How Plants Grow (Biology Homework for Mr Chambers)

Of all the year's four seasons, it's Spring I like the best,
When Nature's clothes are not yet on, except its pants and vest.
The twigs are growing stronger, the tree-trunks stand up proud,
And on their sprouting branches the birds all sing aloud.
There's blossom on the cherry trees and acorns on the oak,
The ash and elm and beech look fresh, and everyone drinks coke.
The hedgerow is a lovely sight, it's getting on for June,
The flowers are in their tiny buds, they'll be in bloom soon.
And then we'll see their petals on top of healthy stems.
To me they are as precious as the most expensive gems.
There are nettles by the river, there are rushes by the lake,
There's masses of moss and thousands of ferns, the thistles and thorns are awake.
There are needles on the pine trees and beginnings of their cones,
And fruits growing on the bushes, the heavy shrub, it groans (under the weight, sir)
I know all the plants will wither, they'll fade and then they'll die,
The clover will be over, and I always wonder why.
And then in late September, oh dear, here comes the autumn.
The coloured leaves blow off the trees, last year I ran and caught them.

No, this will not do. Our lessons are concerned with biology, not English verse. You will do this again, and give it to me on Friday!

24.4.89 How Plants Grow (Biology Homework for Mr Chambers)

Plants can be divided into ten categories, including bacteria, fungi, algae and less common and much longer Latin names. One of these comprises all flowering plants, crops, trees and most other natural vegetation on land.
Plants grow by a process called photosynthesis, which nobody really understands, including me. The leaves (or foliage) absorb carbon dioxide from the air when the pigment in them called chlorophyll is exposed to sunlight. Meanwhile, the roots absorb water and mineral salts from the soil and somehow send them up the shoot.
There is something poetic about the reproductive process in 'higher' plants. Every cell contains two sets of chromosomes, each with a lot of genes arranged in pairs. I think this is important. The flower is the reproductive part of the organism. It has four main parts: sepals on the outside, then petals, then stamens which hold the pollen grains or male cells, and inside the style, containing ovules in ovaries - basically the female seeds. Then the bits of pollen are carried by the wind or insects to the female part, two cells come together, pollination has taken place, and the thing is fertilised. This is a brief summary of how plants grow. Perhaps the picture will help:

Better work, but I think we could probably do without the artistic illustrations thank you. Our lessons are concerned with biology.
The plant world

Practice

Only try to learn the following words if you are a real nature-lover. On the other hand, it might be worth being able to recognise them.
Try to find the answer to each question from the words printed below it.

1 Which one of these is not an evergreen tree?
  a cedar  a cypress  a holly tree  a laurel  a willow  a fir tree  a yew
2 And which of these is not deciduous?
  a (silver) birch  a sycamore  a horse-chestnut  a poplar  a plane tree  a yew
3 There are, of course, hundreds of different flowers: some wild, some cultivated, some both (like a daffodil). Which of these are normally garden flowers, and which wild? Mark them G or W respectively.
  iris  carnation  hyacinth  bluebell  daisy  marigold  orchid  lily  dandelion  pansy  rose  narcissus  crocus  snowdrop  primrose  poppy

The following sentences are broken up into three sections, which have been mixed up. Try to rearrange them, so that they make more sense. They are describing where certain plants are usually found.

There was / were:

1 waterlilies  climbing up the walls  in the jungle.
2 seaweed  in a clearing  of the old house.
3 a ring of toadstools  in the marshland  and the sea bed.
4 heather and gorse  on the pond  on the seashore.
5 reeds  clinging to the bark  in the middle of the meadow.
6 coral  near an oasis  in the forest.
7 long creepers  on pebbles in rock pools  and moorland.
8 moss  all over the reef  in the desert.
9 ivy  on the heath  and swamps.
10 cacti and palm trees  among the undergrowth  of the trees in the wood.

[3] Write or discuss the answers to these questions.

1 How do you feel schoolchildren can best be introduced to nature and the natural sciences?
2 How would you arrange, if you could, a garden of a hundred square metres?

[4] Write part of an enthusiastic letter to a friend explaining why this present season is your favourite one.

Write an article for your local magazine entitled: 'City-dwellers don't know what they're missing'. Try to convince the reader of the joys of the countryside.

Add any other words about plants and flowers as you meet them.
The animal world

Quiz

Here's an animal quiz which will refresh your memory on some key words as well as the names of about 150 animals. There are a lot of words in bold print here. Don't despair! Your own language may help you a lot, and you only need to remember those words that you may need to use. You just need to recognise the other ones. Try to learn the most general terms, in particular. Select the correct answer to each question.

PART ONE (not very difficult)

1 Which is the largest of the ape and monkey families, full-grown?
   a chimpanzee  b orang-outang  c gorilla

2 Which of these is not a mammal?
   a whale  b porpoise  c shark  d dolphin

3 Which of these is a marsupial?
   a kangaroo  b camel  c panda

4 Which of these hasn't got a shell on its back?
   a snail  b tortoise  c turtle  d crab  e octopus

5 Which of these hasn't got tusks but has got whiskers?
   a elephant  b walrus  c seal

6 Which of these hasn't got horns?
   a rhino(ceros)  b hippo(potamus)  c bull  d goat  e deer
   f antelope

7 Which of these has spots rather than stripes?
   a zebra  b leopard  c tiger

8 Whose fur might you expect to pay most for?
   a fox  b mink  c rabbit

9 Which member of the snake family is this?
   a viper  b boa constrictor  c cobra  d python  e rattlesnake

10 Which of these animals is not carnivorous?
    a hyena  b reindeer  c polar bear

11 Which of these insects doesn't sting?
    a ant  b wasp  c bee  d ladybird

12 Which won't bite you?
    a mosquito  b flea  c butterfly  d fly

13 Which of these beasts hasn't got a hump?
    a bison  b ox  c camel

14 Which of these birds can fly?
    a penguin  b ostrich  c goose  d emu  e kiwi

15 Which of these birds has the most impressive tail?
    a peacock  b pigeon  c sparrow  d budgerigar

16 Which of these animals does not normally hibernate?
    a bear  b squirrel  c dormouse  d rat

17 Which of these has most legs?
    a spider  b scorpion  c centipede  d beetle  e worm
    f piranha fish

18 Which of these birds' feathers aren't black?
    a blackbird  b crow  c raven  d blue tit

19 Which of these creatures is not extinct?
    a mammoth  b dinosaur  c pterodactyl  d buffalo
    e brontosaurus
20 Which birds are these?
a the symbol of peace?
b the announcer of spring?
c supposed to be very wise?
d with perhaps the most beautiful singing voice?

PAET TWO (more difficult)

21 Which member of the cat family is this?
a cheetah b panther c lion

22 Which of these is not a fabulous creature?
a dragon b unicorn c chameleon d mermaid

23 Which of these reptiles is not an amphibian?
a crocodile b iguana c alligator d newt

24 Which of these is not related to the dog?
a wolf b jackal c yak

25 Which breed of dog is this?
a Alsatian b terrier c spaniel d Pekinese e poodle f foxhound g labrador h greyhound i bulldog

26 Which of these is not nocturnal?
a moth b badger c bat d koala bear

27 Which of these creatures has got gills?
a lizard b toad c lobster d dragonfly

28 Which of these runners would win a 5000 metres race?
a gazelle b elk c wildebeest

29 Which of these would win the high jump?
a frog b grasshopper or cricket c giraffe

30 Which of these four is a cross between two of the others?
a horse b ass c donkey d mule

31 Which of these animals has hooves as opposed to paws and claws?
a stag b hare c otter d racoon

32 Which rodent is this?
a beaver b guinea-pig c hamster d mole

33 Which of these is not a bird of prey?
a hawk b falcon c vulture d woodpecker e eagle

34 Which of these is not a wading bird?
a stork b flamingo c swan

35 Which of these does not normally migrate?
a robin b swallow c thrush

36 Which is this species of vermin?
a weasel b skunk c stoat

37 Which of these birds has the longest wings?
a albatross b seagull c humming-bird

38 Which of these creatures is not prickly?
a hedgehog b porcupine c cockroach

39 Which of these cold-blooded sea creatures has tentacles and no fins?
a jellyfish b swordfish c stingray d flying fish

40 Which bird:
a starts the day with its cry?
b is a bit of a petty thief?
c is found in the expression: to learn something ...-fashion?
d is found in the expression: as dead as a ...

Answers: 1c 2e 3a 4e 5c 6b 7b 8b 9c 10b 11d 12c 13b 14c 15a 16d 17c 18d 19d 20 dove cuckoo owl nightingale 21c 22c 23b 24c 25h 26d 27c 28a 29b 30d 31a 32a 33d 34c 35a 36a 37a 38c 39a 40 cock(erel) magpie parrot dodo
The animal world

Practice

In the case of some pets, farmyard animals, and even some wild ones, we don't stop at giving them a basic name. The male and the female are given different names. Whereas we don't often have to ask, 'Is that a man or a woman?' when it comes to animals, 'Is it a he or a she?' is a fairly common question. If you think these words may be useful to you in future, try to decide which of these pairs is male and which female.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Male</th>
<th>Female</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mare</td>
<td>fox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stallion</td>
<td>vixen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buck</td>
<td>dog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doe</td>
<td>bitch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ewe</td>
<td>tiger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ram</td>
<td>tigress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stallion</td>
<td>drake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cow</td>
<td>bull</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hen</td>
<td>cat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cock</td>
<td>tom(cat)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goat</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hen</td>
<td>bitch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lion</td>
<td>tom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tigress</td>
<td>drake</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We also have a number of specific names for various animals' young. Match the grown animals, birds and insects (on the left) with their young (on the right).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adult</th>
<th>Young</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dogs</td>
<td>kids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheep</td>
<td>lambs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cows</td>
<td>chicks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pigs</td>
<td>larvae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horses</td>
<td>puppies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>butterflies</td>
<td>caterpillars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cats</td>
<td>cubs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goats</td>
<td>foals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hens</td>
<td>calves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lions</td>
<td>piglets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insects</td>
<td>kittens</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Then, of course, all animals have got to live somewhere. Work out which animals live where.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Home</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cows</td>
<td>a sty, a hive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pigs</td>
<td>a nest, a hiv e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dogs</td>
<td>a kennel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bees</td>
<td>a cage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horses</td>
<td>a hutch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tame rabbits</td>
<td>a den (or lair)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wild rabbits</td>
<td>a shed (or stall)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>canaries</td>
<td>a stable (or stall)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>most birds</td>
<td>a hole (or burrow)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you've learnt all those words, you must be a real animal-lover. Who knows when you might want to describe a hundred swans high above you, or two hundred buffalo charging or three hundred cattle stampeding towards you? If you do, you will need the words used to describe a group of animals. Match the group words below with the correct kind of wildlife.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Wildlife</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a herd of</td>
<td>a fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a pack of</td>
<td>bees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a flock of</td>
<td>wolves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a swarm of</td>
<td>cattle, elephants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a shoal of</td>
<td>sheep, birds</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note but do not try to learn (unless they are of particular interest to you) a pride of lions, a school of whales and other rarer group nouns.

[5] There are words for the particular noises that animals make. Read the poem on the next page. It should help you to remember them. Then think of an animal and test yourself by trying to remember the word for the noise it makes.
In Praise of Fish

Cats **purr**
As they lick their fur;
Horses **neigh,**
Donkeys **bray;**
Hounds bay
At the bloody ground
Horriblesound,
**Barking** hounds,
**Snapping and yapping,**
Tails wagging.
Lions **roar**
If they hurt their paw.
Hawks **squawk**
If they hurt their claw.
But fish don't talk,
Thank the Lord.

Mice **squeak,**
Sheep **bleat** -
So do goats;
A frog **croaks.**
Most birds **cheep,**
Some **screech,**
But fish can't speak,
Thank Heavens.
Unlike fish,
Snakes hiss.
And like it or lump it,
Elephants **trumpet.**
Pigs **grunt,**
Flies hum,
But fish are dumb,
Thank God.

Wolves **howl,**
Dogs will **growl**
With a vicious snarl
If you steal their meal.
Piglets **squeal**
So you know they feel
While their mothers **snort**
As they're brought to the slaughterhouse.
Fish don't **buzz,**
As a queen bee does.
Ducklings **quack,**
And bulldogs **snap**
At the postman's boots.
Owls **hoot,**
But a fish is mute,
Thank Goodness.
Below you see a list of parts of animals' bodies. Take each word and find a creature in this unit which has it as part of their body.

- a tail
- hind legs
- stripes
- spots
- udders
- horns
- tusks
- a mane
- wings
- claws
- paws
- tentacles
- hooves
- a trunk
- fins
- a hump
- fur
- scales
- whiskers
- a pouch
- a shell
- webbed feet
- feelers or antennae
- a beak

Write or discuss the answers to questions 1-6.

1. Which animals make the best pets?
2. What, if anything, does keeping a pet teach a child?
3. Would you like your children to be brought up on a farm?
4. Why are we happy to eat certain animals and not others?
5. Which animals would you rather not touch? Can you say why?
6. Children get to know a lot of animals through books and toys. Think of about ten animals found in children's books. What image does each of them normally have?

Write part of a letter to a friend describing the afternoon you took a group of young children to a zoo or safari park.

Write the opening of your speech at an 'Animal Liberation' meeting, attacking the way animals are used and abused by human beings: in sport, circuses etc.

Add any other words about animals as you meet them.
Food and drink

Study

Which of these vegetables can you find in the picture? Label each vegetable in the picture with the appropriate number.

Now try and do the same with the different fruit below. Then mark your favourite fruit and vegetables by putting a ring round the number beside each of them.

Practice

Meat

This is a short section, in case you are a vegetarian! Most cuts of meat are spoken of in English which comes from ‘polite’ Norman French. The parts that fall off or out of the animal when it is cut up (offal) tend to come from Anglo-Saxon. Which of these meats are your favourites? Which wouldn't you eat for a million dollars?

| 1 onion | 7 potato | 12 cabbage | 17 lettuce | 22 celery |
| 2 peas | 8 beans | 13 beetroot | 18 tomato | 23 cauliflower |
| 3 asparagus | 9 carrot | 14 broccoli | 19 chicory | 24 artichoke |
| 4 parsnip | 10 turnip | 15 swede | 20 leek | 25 marrow |
| 5 courgette | 11 mushroom | 16 watercress | 21 spinach | 26 radish |

| 1 apple | 7 orange | 12 cherry | 17 pear | 22 plum |
| 2 apricot | 8 peach | 13 strawberry | 18 raspberry | 23 gooseberry |
| 3 rhubarb | 9 blackberry | 14 grapefruit | 19 banana | 24 lemon |
| 4 melon | 10 grapes | 15 pineapple | 20 fig | 25 date |
| 5 nuts | 11 coconut | 16 currants | 21 mango | 26 lime |
| 6 pawpaw | | | | |

| a joint of beef | oxtail |
| beefsteak | ox tongue |
| stewing beef/ steak | |
Food and drink

- a fillet of beef
- veal cutlets
- veal escalopes
- a shoulder of veal
- lamb chops
- a shoulder of mutton
- a leg of pork
- pork sausages
- calf's liver
- calf's heart
- calf's liver
- calf's heart
- calf's foot
- lambs brains
- sheep's head
- pig's kidney
- pig’s blood

Note that the pig is also responsible for providing us with cured and smoked meat: ham, gammon and bacon.

Poultry

These are birds which can be eaten but are not hunted with a shotgun. Read the questions and select or write the appropriate answer for each of them.

1 Which of these five birds is white in the northern hemisphere but can be black in Australia?
   a chicken b turkey c swan d goose e duck

2 What is eaten with each of the above types of poultry in your country?

Game

Game is the group name for the wild animals and birds which are hunted and then eaten (rabbits, hares etc). Select or write an answer for each question.

1 One of these meats is not from a bird. Which is it?
   a pheasant b venison c partridge d pigeon e grouse

2 How popular is this type of food in your country?

3 Should shooting game as a sport be encouraged or discouraged?

Fish

Read the questions and select the appropriate answer(s) for each of them.

1 Which of these would you describe as white fish and which is oily?
   a sole b cod c plaice d trout e haddock f salmon g eel
   h mackerel i herring

2 Some of the above fish are freshwater fish, that is to say they spend all or most of their life in a river. Some are sea fish. Underline the freshwater fish.

3 Ring your favourites in the list of fish in question 1. Then select how you like each of them cooked.
   a grilled b fried c baked d smoked e in a sauce f in a soup
   g in a stew

4 One of these is not an example of shellfish (seafood). Which one?
   a crab b lobster c shrimp d prawn e oyster f cockle
g mussel h kipper

Cereals and grasses

Match the list of cereals 1- 6 with statements a - f.

1 wheat 2 maize 3 rye 4 barley 5 oats 6 rice

a Most porridge is made of it. It is also used to feed horses.
b It is the staple diet in the East.
c It provides corn on the cob, a lot of cornflour, and American whisky.
d It is used to make black bread, cattle feed and some kinds of American whisky.
e It is used a lot in brewing and soups and malt is made from it.
f It is used to make white bread and most pasta.
Pasta

Talking of pasta, below are a few of the approximately thirty types that are most commonly eaten. Ring those that you like most.

- a spaghetti  
- b macaroni  
- c noodles  
- d ravioli  
- e lasagne

Herbs and spices

[1] Which of these herbs do you like to use in your cooking? What sort of food do you use them with?

1 garlic  
2 marjoram  
3 mint  
4 parsley  
5 rosemary  
6 sage  
7 thyme  
8 bay leaf  
9 oregano

[2] Which of these spices would you find it difficult to live without?

1 black or white pepper  
2 cayenne pepper  
3 vanilla  
4 ginger  
5 nutmeg  
6 cinnamon  
7 pimento (paprika)  
8 chilli

[3] Do you agree that if the ingredients of the meal have the proper taste you don’t need all that seasoning?

What our food contains

Look at the advertisement on the next page, which lists for you some of the elements in the food we eat, for example protein, carbohydrates etc. Ask yourself how much you eat of each in a typical day’s diet.

Food in general

[1] Write or discuss the answers to these questions.

1. How careful are you about having a well-balanced or a calorie-controlled diet?
2. How healthy do you think healthfoods really are?
3. We should all ‘eat, drink and be merry’. Do you agree?
4. What (in detail) are your favourite restaurant meals at about these prices:
   - a £2.50? (cheap)
   - b £5.00? (quite reasonable)
   - c £10? (average)
   - d £20 - 25? (expensive)

[2] Write or act out a conversation with a waiter. You are ordering one of the meals you listed above. Remember the sort of restaurant you’re in and be prepared to choose an alternative if what you ask for is unavailable.

[3] Write a page from your diary. It is the fifteenth day that you have been on a really strict diet.

[4] Write, in dialogue form, a conversation between a butcher and a regular customer who does not find any of the meat in the window particularly attractive or good value.
IT'S HERE!
At Last The Pill You've All Been Waiting For! The Pill To End All Pills!

THE PILL TO END ALL OTHER FOOD!

**N U T R I X™**

FROM INTERNATIONAL FOOD SUBSTITUTES AND ASSOCIATED CHEMICAL INDUSTRIES INC.

**N U T R I X™**

We are proud to announce that we have started full production of this revolutionary new pill which will turn your eating habits upside down and turn your life-style inside out.

**N U T R I X™**

I is guaranteed to provide a well-balanced daily diet with all the nutrients of conventional food, and a whole lot more.
I is rich in body-building protein - as much as in half a dozen eggs, and has an equally high iron content.
I has as many vitamins as you'd find in 6 pints of milk, 5 pints of yoghurt and 20 pints of beer; it contains as much vitamin E as a fridge-full of margarine.
I allows you a carefully-controlled intake of carbohydrates, starch, sugars etc. and a concentrated source of energy through fats equal to that found in 6 pounds of cottage cheese and 2 whole pounds of cream. Now with the cholesterol problem eliminated!
I contains all essential minerals like calcium and iodine (as much as in 25 family-size packets of salt and vinegar-flavoured crisps).
I still has, believe it or not, fewer calories than 5 kilos of suet or lard.

As part of our promotion for this exciting new product, we are offering one free pill when you buy one each from our range of eight tempting flavours:
HONEY STRAWBERRY JAM MARMALADE SOYA SAUCE HAM TOFFEE MALTED MILK BEEF EXTRACT

**N U T R I X™**

CRUNCH IT, MUNCH IT LIKE A DIGESTIVE BISCUIT or CHEW IT LIKE GUM or DISSOLVE IT IN 100 MLS. OF WATER

**N U T R I X™**

IT'S AVAILABLE, IN YOUR SHOPS, NATIONWIDE, NOW!

Add any other words about food and drink as you meet them.
Buildings and rooms

Games

[1] Cover the right-hand column.
I have a room in a small semi-detached house. Two of my friends live in mansions. What sort of accommodation do (did) these people have, or what might they be living in at the moment?

1 a queen a palace or castle
2 an eskimo an igloo
3 a Red Indian a hundred years ago a wigwam or tepee
4 a monk a monastery
5 a nun a convent (or nunnery)
6 an eighty-year-old with no living relatives an old people's home
7 a soldier barracks or living quarters
8 a cowboy a ranch(-house)
9 a travelling sales representative away from home a motel
10 a forester in Canada a (log-)cabin
11 skiers in the mountains a chalet
12 holiday-makers who find hotels too big or expensive - or both a guest house (or boarding house)
13 a well-off couple holidaying in the South of France a villa
14 a camper a tent (or caravan)
15 a successful advertising executive a penthouse (suite)
16 a tramp - if he's lucky a hovel, garden shed, an old hut

Cover the right-hand column again.
I spend a lot of time in my bed-sitting room (bedsitter). In which room might it be a good idea to look for these people?

1 an artist a studio
2 a dentist a surgery
3 a novelist a study
4 a carpenter a workshop
5 some sailors a cabin
6 a secretary an office
7 some teachers a staffroom
8 a prisoner a cell
9 a dentist's patients before their appointments a waiting room
10 a rugby player after a match a changing room
11 some factory workers at lunchtime a canteen
12 a gardener a shed or greenhouse
13 some toddlers a playroom or nursery
14 a photographer busy developing photos a darkroom
15 some off-duty soldiers a mess(-room)
16 a swimmer after her swim a changing cubicle
17 a street-market trader a stall
18 a secret wine-taster a (wine-)cellar
19 a pilot, mid-flight a cockpit
20 a corpse a mortuary (morgue)
Buildings and rooms

Practice

Note the areas, rooms and sections in the buildings shown below. Answer the following questions.
1 Which buildings are they?
2 What happens in the various parts of them?
3 Where would you expect to find the people listed below?

an usherette  
a surgeon  
a headmaster  
a guard  
the cast  
a congregation  
7 a librarian  
8 a sales assistant  
9 a prompter  
10 the defendant  
11 a sister  
12 a local councillor
Two of the buildings on the previous page were, of course, shops. Shopping habits, like everything else, have changed a lot in the past twenty years. It was not long ago that names like Hypermarket, Department Store, Boutique, Cash and Carry, Discount Store, Do-It-Yourself Supplies, Takeaway Food had little or no place in our high streets.

My grandfather still refuses to shop in any of these places. Cover the right-hand column and say where you think he would go to buy the following things.

1. a nice piece of cod
2. a dozen blue envelopes
3. a box of soft-centred chocolates
4. a copy of Time magazine
5. a dozen pink carnations
6. a bar of perfumed soap
7. a cauliflower or some broccoli
8. a three-piece suit
9. half a dozen wholemeal rolls
10. an ounce of pipe tobacco and a box of matches
11. a couple of pork chops
12. a packet of one-inch nails
13. a goldfish
14. a sack of coal
15. a seventeenth-century grandfather clock
16. a pair of sheets and pillow cases

a fishmonger's
a stationer's
a confectioner's
a newsagent's
a florist's
a chemist's
a (green) grocer's
a tailor's
a baker's
tobacco
a tobacconist's
a butcher's
a ironmonger's
a pet shop
a coal merchant's
an antique dealer
da draper's

[3] Write or act out what you would say while showing the people mentioned around the buildings below.

1. new students around a boarding school
2. new guests around a hotel
3. new employees around a factory
4. new prisoners around a prison

[4] You have an empty building about sixty metres by forty, and you have just made a fortune. Plan and draw the layout for using it for each of the following purposes.

1. a new supermarket
2. a sports centre
3. a library
4. a youth club

[5] Write a paragraph for a travel brochure on a castle, church or cathedral which you particularly like.

[6] Write an article for your school, college or workplace magazine entitled: 'The only sensible way to shop nowadays is in big stores'.

[7] Write part of your letter to the sports centre, complaining about how confusing the signs are outside and just inside the building.

- Add any other words about buildings and rooms as you meet them.
Furniture and household

Reading

Over the next day or two, read through this rather strange application form, noting how the couple describe the house in question and its furniture. As you read, answer the question below.

If the couple decided to sell the house next month, which of these features could they say that it had?

1 two bathrooms  6 three bedrooms
2 polished wooden floors  7 a spacious garden shed
3 a slate roof  8 excellent period fireplaces
4 attractive wallpaper throughout  9 a mature vegetable garden
5 double glazed windows  10 a modern kitchen

Application Form XYB / 43Z Sect. 51
To Join The Yuppies' (Young Upwardly-Mobile) Neighbourhood Scheme
Remarks:
(Please state briefly below any qualifications and/or experience you have to support your application.)

When my wife and I moved into our present house, it was little better than a slum, completely unfurnished apart from a few bits and pieces which the former occupant had either forgotten to or - more likely - decided not to take with her. (These included an enormous sideboard that weighed a ton, a chest of drawers with its only remaining door hanging off, an ugly bookcase with all its panes of glass cracked, and a broken nineteenth-century piano stool.)

The floors then were just bare boards with one or two mats and strips of lino. We now have fitted carpets in every room except the bathroom (where we have special long-lasting tiles at over £20 per square foot,) and the kitchen (polished parquet floor), plus several sheepskin rugs in the reception rooms. On arrival, we found most of the interior decorated with faded, flowery-patterned wallpaper, peeling at the picture rail. We have painted throughout in magnolia (windows and sills wine-red or stripped pine) except in the lounge, where we have had hessian hung. A few tasteful reproductions and a number of old German prints (all expensively framed) are on the walls, along with some carefully selected posters in the children's rooms.

Numerous structural alterations have been carried out, notably the conversion of the old garden shed into a second bathroom, complete with bath, basin, bidet and W.C. (lambswool-covered lavatory seat and press-button flush) and the extension of the conservatory to make a sun lounge - with window seats all around it — leading on to the newly-laid patio. The roof, meanwhile, has been completely renovated, slates giving way to tiles, double glazing has been fitted on all windows, and the old fireplaces have been blocked up, except in the lounge which has retained its grate and mantelpiece for the old-world image it creates. In terms of heating, we have graduated from electric fires to gas fires, convector heaters, storage heaters and recently to full gas-fired central heating with extra-large boiler and double radiators, each with its own thermostatic control.
We have also made dramatic improvements in the kitchen. The old installations were ripped out last year and in their place came: a new sink unit with mixer tap and double drainer, a line of smart cupboards all along one wall and two rows of shelves along the other, a split-level cooker, eye-level grill, double oven - you name it, I think we've got it. Upstairs, the old iron double bed we inherited has been replaced by elegant twin beds with interior-sprung mattresses and continental quilts (duvets), of course. Our children, Alexandra and Charles, have recently moved out of their bunk beds and into single beds in separate rooms; these have been specially equipped with a desk, blackboard and easel, and toy chest. All bedrooms have built-in wardrobes now and my wife has her own personal dressing table.

Our more expensive purchases, apart from the above, include: a leather upholstered lounge suite comprising a four-seater sofa - or should we say settee? - and two armchairs. (We remember with horror the year we had to make do with a studio couch plus a few pouffes and cushions.) a solid wood table and set of matching dining room chairs, plus a microwave oven. a new shower unit in the master bathroom, plumbed in of course, so that no unsightly pipes are visible. new stereo equipment, colour TV, a video recorder, home computer and cocktail cabinet.

It may interest you to know, finally, that we have made a formal complaint about the ghastly tallboy and divan that our neighbours have had standing in their back garden for nearly six months. (Our garden, incidentally, has been recently landscaped and completely transformed: gone is the vegetable patch; in its place a neat lawn and flower-beds.) All our (new) friends say we have done a wonderful job on our property. One or two have invited us to join the amateur dramatic society and they are even giving us the names of private schools in the area. I hope you will consider our application favourably.

Signature:
Date:

Practice 1

Write or discuss the answers to these questions.

1 What do you like and what don't you like about the place where you live?
2 What things would you like to have done to improve your room, flat or house?

Describe, in as much detail as possible, the most beautiful bedroom you can imagine.

Describe the poorest-looking house you remember being in.

Write or act out the conversation in a furniture shop between you and the sales assistant, as you try to decide what to buy for your new flat.

Write instructions to leave with the removal men who are helping you to move house. Tell them where everything is at the moment and where you would like it in your new home. Warn them about any particularly important or fragile articles.

Write the opening of the speech that you make as a tourist guide showing groups of visitors around the state room(s) of a palace, castle or large country house near your home.
Furniture and household

Write the opening paragraph of your latest short story, in which you describe your feelings as you revisit the house in which you grew up, now much changed.

Game 1

Cover the right-hand column. On the left are listed the uses of some rectangular pieces of material that no household should be without. Guess what they are and then check your answers in the right-hand column.

1 things to sleep between (a pair of) sheets
2 something to clean and polish table tops a duster
3 something to wash your face with a flannel
4 and to dry it with a towel
5 something to wipe your mouth with after eating a serviette or napkin
6 something to put round baby's bottom a nappy
7 things to keep you warm in bed blankets (bedspread/duvet)
8 something to blow your nose with a handkerchief (tissue, hankie)
9 something to wash up with a dishcloth or scourer
10 and dry the dishes with a tea-towel or teacloth
11 something to cover the table before laying it a table cloth
12 something to put hot dinner plates on a table mat
13 something to clean the floor with a floor cloth
14 things to stop people peeping through the windows at you net curtains (or blinds)

Practice 2

Think for a moment about how important some of our household gadgets and devices are to us.

1 If you had to live without two of the following, which ones would you choose to leave behind?
   a fridge (refrigerator) a dryer (spin or tumble dryer)
   a hoover (vacuum cleaner) a washing machine
   a freezer

2 And which three of these?
   an iron an electric kettle
   a mixer an coffee grinder
   a toaster a hairdryer
   a liquidiser

3 Which of these do you prefer to be electric? All of them or not?
   a drill a screwdriver
   a saw a sander
   a razor a lawnmower
   a toothbrush a whisk (to beat eggs etc.)
   a typewriter curling tongs (or hair curlers/rollers)

Game 2

Look carefully at the pictures on the next page. In them there are tools, appliances, items of crockery and cutlery. Under each of them are four names. Only one of them labels the picture correctly. Decide which it is.

Then make sure you know the other words given in each group as well. Draw each of them and then try to give the English word for each drawing without looking at the book. Alternatively, write a sentence to show the meaning of each word.
Furniture and household

- a garden fork
- a spade
- a rake
- a hoe

- a pair of shears
- a shovel
- a scythe
- a sickle

- a mop
- a broom
- a carpet sweeper
- a brush

- a hammer
- a chisel
- a spanner
- a plane

- a spatula
- a corkscrew
- a tin opener
- a garlic crusher

- a strainer
- a grater
- a peeler
- a colander

- a teaspoon
- a ladle
- a soup spoon
- a dessert spoon

- a mug
- a teacup
- a tumbler
- a wine glass

- a salt cellar
- a sieve
- a pepper mill
- an eggcup

- a casserole dish
- a baking tray
- a mixing bowl
- a thermos flask

- a breadboard
- a chopping board
- a draining board
- an ironing board
Answer the questions. Then make sure that you know the meaning of all the words that are not the correct answer.

1 Which of these four instruments wouldn’t be of much use to a carpenter?
   a vice  a stethoscope  a set square  a saw
2 Which of these tools wouldn’t interest a metal worker?
   a tuning fork  a file  a wrench  a lathe
3 Here are four instruments we can look through:
   a telescope  binoculars  opera glasses  a microscope.
Which would you use:
   a to see more clearly what that ballerina looks like?
   b to study the markings on the leopard over there?
   c to have a good look at Venus this evening?
   d to examine a drop of your blood?

Leaving aside mysterious inventions like lie-detectors, the test tubes and bunsen burners of the chemistry laboratory, the surgeon’s scalpel, the dentist’s drill and the fireman’s hose, here is one more picture. What is this? Is it:
   a a pencil sharpener?  b a pair of compasses?  c a torch?
   d a cigarette lighter?  e a bottle-opener?  f a rubber?

Study and practice

Here are some more instruments and gadgets that measure things for us. Cover the right-hand column, and see if you can give their names. Then check your answers.

What is it that tells you:

1 how fast you’re driving in your new sports car?
2 how much more air you need to pump into your tyres?
3 which way you’re travelling in the desert?
4 what your temperature is?
5 how heavy you or the potatoes are?
6 how many centimetres you are round the waist?
7 how much electricity or gas you’ve used this quarter?
8 how much you’ve spent at the supermarket?
9 how fast to play the piece of music?
10 approximately how much oil you’ve got in the car?
11 how long a line is?
12 how fast you’ve just run the hundred metres?
13 when your line or surface is exactly level?
14 about the atmospheric pressure?
15 how many degrees there are in an angle?
16 how much alcohol there is in your blood according to the police?

   a speedometer  a pressure gauge  a compass
   a thermometer  a (pair of) scales  a tape measure
   a meter  a cash register (till)
   a metronome  a dipstick  a ruler (metal rule)
   a stopwatch  a spirit level  a barometer
   a protractor  a breathalyser
Finally, in this section, let's think about containers and holders. It's amazing how many there are in and around a house. On the left below you will see a list of them. On the right are examples of their different types. Some of them combine into one word, others remain as two words. Cover the words on the right and try to think of as many as you can for each container. Then check your answers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BOX</th>
<th>matchbox</th>
<th>seedbox</th>
<th>toolbox</th>
<th>musical box</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BAG</td>
<td>handbag</td>
<td>carrier bag</td>
<td>shoulder bag</td>
<td>paper bag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOWL</td>
<td>sugar bowl</td>
<td>fruit bowl</td>
<td>soup bowl</td>
<td>goldfish bowl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAN</td>
<td>saucepan</td>
<td>frying pan</td>
<td>dustpan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BASKET</td>
<td>laundry basket</td>
<td>wastepaper basket</td>
<td>shopping basket</td>
<td>picnic basket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CASE</td>
<td>suitcase</td>
<td>bookcase</td>
<td>pencil case</td>
<td>pillow case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAN</td>
<td>oil can</td>
<td>watering can</td>
<td>petrol can</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK</td>
<td>oil tank</td>
<td>water tank</td>
<td>fish tank</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POT</td>
<td>flowerpot</td>
<td>mustard pot</td>
<td>coffee pot</td>
<td>teapot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RACK</td>
<td>pipe rack</td>
<td>cassette rack</td>
<td>luggage rack</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAIL</td>
<td>towel rail</td>
<td>handrail</td>
<td>picture rail</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HOLDER</td>
<td>umbrella stand</td>
<td>hat stand</td>
<td>microphone stand</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIN</td>
<td>dustbin</td>
<td>rubbish bin</td>
<td>litter bin</td>
<td>pedal bin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JUG</td>
<td>milk jug</td>
<td>measuring jug</td>
<td>water jug</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remember that we might put:

- flowers in a vase.
- candles in a candlestick.
- water in a bucket.
- money in a purse, wallet, safe or piggybank.

Practice 3

Write or give a partner detailed advice on each of the following situations.

1. His/Her garden looks a complete mess.
2. He/She has no idea what to take with him/her on his/her camping holiday.
3. None of his/her doors close properly because of the carpets.
4. He/She has always kept all his/her crockery, cutlery and kitchen utensils in one big cupboard. He/She has just bought some new kitchen units and has no idea where to put things so that they are easy to find.

Explain which odd jobs around the house you enjoy and which you hate. Give your reasons.

Describe how housework and people's attitudes to it have changed over the past thirty or forty years.

What bits and pieces are elderly peoples' houses full of in your country? Describe in some detail the objects in their sitting room, the spare room, the loft, the garden shed etc.

Write a letter of complaint to the shop where you bought a set of tools recently, almost none of which work properly.

Write, in dialogue form, a conversation in a furniture shop between an inquisitive customer and a knowledgeable assistant.
Write the list of wedding presents you want to circulate in advance to your guests. (This 'ordering' of gifts is customary in Britain. It avoids your being given six toasters and a hundred and ninety-two wine glasses.)

- Add any other words about furniture and household appliances as you meet them.
Vehicles

Study and practice

Study the words for the parts of the car illustrated below. Then test yourself by covering the words and trying to recall them.

1 bumper
2 wheels
3 tyres
4 bonnet
5 exhaust pipe
6 petrol cap
7 headlights
8 sidelights
9 number plate
10 boot
11 aerial
12 bodywork
13 wing mirror
14 windscreen
15 roof-rack
16 radiator grille

1 dashboard
2 choke
3 horn
4 ignition
5 speedometer
6 panel
7 gear (stick / lever)
8 handbrake
9 heater
10 windscreen wipers
11 accelerator
12 (foot)brake
13 clutch
14 indicators
Vehicles

1 engine
2 fan belt
3 carburettor
4 battery
5 distributor
6 dipstick
7 radiator
8 (sparking) plugs

Fill each gap in the sentences below with one of the words you see illustrated above.

1 It won't start; either the ... is flat, or the ... are dirty.
2 It's got a nice spacious ... for your luggage, all-weather ... to reduce the risk of skidding in wet weather, and a ... showing you everything from the time you've been travelling to the ... you should be in at any given moment.
3 Fortunately the ... wasn't damaged when he drove into the back of me, but the ... is quite badly bent.
4 The first thing you do for an emergency stop is take your foot off the ... and press both feet down on the ... and the ....
5 If you have the ... out for too long, the ... will be flooded with petrol.

Draw your own pictures with parts of the car missing or in the wrong place. Write under each picture what is wrong with it and how it should be drawn, or ask a partner to explain this to you.

Would you prefer to travel by bicycle? Take a look at the parts of the bike shown here; then test yourself by covering the words.

1 handlebars
2 bell
3 pedals
4 mudguard
5 tyre
6 valve
7 chain
8 saddle
9 crossbar
10 spokes
11 inner tube
12 pump

See if you can explain the difference between the following types of vehicle.

1 a tandem, a normal bicycle
2 a wheelchair, a push-chair
3 a scooter, a moped
4 a trolley, a pram
5 a sleigh, a toboggan
6 an estate car, a hatchback
7 a tricycle, a three-wheeler
8 a lorry, a truck, a van
9 a bus, a tram, a coach
Reading

Now read this advertisement.

PAN-ANGLO RAIL

We’ve come a long way since John and Mary were here!

TODAY WE OFFER YOU:

INTER-CITY SERVICES AT REGULAR INTERVALS
HIGH-SPEED LOCOMOTIVES
UP-TO-DATE CARRIAGES
LUXURIOUS COMPARTMENTS
BUFFET CARS RESTAURANT CARS

PLUS:

EFFICIENT FREIGHT SERVICES IN PLACE OF THE OLD GOODS TRAINS
COMPUTERIZED CO-ORDINATION IN PLACE OF OLD SIGNAL BOXES
A VAST NETWORK OF UNDERGROUND TRAINS
REGULAR CONNECTIONS TO ALL MAJOR STATIONS

Oh yes, we’ve come a long way since John and Mary were here!

Practice 1


[2] Do you agree that the vehicles on this and the next page are in the right order to show how dangerous they are? Write or say what you think.

racing car
motorcycle (motorbike)
juggernaut
motorbike and sidecar
sports car
(touring) caravan
car with trailer
police car
hearse
Vehicles

- ambulance
- saloon car
- steamroller
- taxi (cab)
- tractor
- milk float
- horse and cart
- invalid car

[3] Note the parts of the strange-looking boat — or is it a ship? - below. Then draw three different kinds of boat and label each drawing.

1. oars
2. rudder
3. mast
4. sail
5. deck
6. hull
7. keel
8. funnel
9. porthole
10. cabin
11. port
12. starboard
13. stern
14. bow
15. propeller

Quizl

Match each of the vessels below with a definition.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ark</th>
<th>raft</th>
<th>punt</th>
<th>ferry</th>
<th>galleon</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tug</td>
<td>rowing boat</td>
<td>launch</td>
<td>paddle steamer</td>
<td>barge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lifeboat</td>
<td>powerboat</td>
<td>lightship</td>
<td>yacht</td>
<td>canoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>houseboat</td>
<td>trawler</td>
<td>dinghy</td>
<td>submarine</td>
<td>liner</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Kōn-tiki was a famous one.
2. Some people like to make their home in one.
3. One might be **transporting** coal up or down the Rhine.
4. Noah would have had problems without one.
5. A small boat, often made of rubber.
6. Full of Brave men who go out to sea in all sorts of weather to help other people.
7. A **fishing boat** that drags a net along the **sea bed**.
8. A participant perhaps in a **sailing race or regatta**.
9. A boat to carry people and their things from one point to another - and back.
10. Didn't they used to travel down the Mississippi in one of these?
11. The Spanish Armada was composed of a number of these.
12. The QE2 is one.
13. An English form of **gondola** - propelled by a **pole**.
14. The river police might chase a suspect in one.
15. A Red Indian would have felt at home in one.
16. This one will take part in a very fast race.
17. You won't get far without oars in this one.
18 A stationary **vessel** that will guide and direct others.
19 You won't see it very often but it might see you through its **periscope**.
20 A little boat that will pull a much bigger one.

Serious **mariners** might make a note of any further **marine** vocabulary here:

---

**Study**

Try to learn any of the words below that you feel might be useful in a future flying career.

![Diagram of a jet plane with numbered parts]

1 tail  
2 wings  
3 cockpit  
4 flaps  
5 undercarriage  
6 window  
7 wheels  
8 nose  
9 fuselage  
10 ejector seat  
11 parachute

**Quiz 2**

Cover the right-hand column and try this little quiz. On your own or in teams, see if you can guess the year when these flying objects first appeared in the sky. (One point for the team nearest the actual date.)

- **a hot-air balloon**: 1783
- **a helicopter**: 1936
- **an earth-orbiting satellite**: 1957
- **a manned spacecraft**: 1961
Vehicles

an aeroplane 1903
a jet plane 1941
a hovercraft 1959
the first supersonic manned flight 1947
a jet airliner 1949

Add here any other words you meet concerning aeroplanes.

Practice 2

Talk in small groups about the following:

1. cars you (or your parents) have had and how good they were.
2. tips you know about how to run your car as economically as possible.
3. unpleasant journeys you have had by land, sea or air.
4. the problems for cyclists on the roads and what can be done about them.
5. airport and aeroplane security: can it be achieved?

Act out the following situations with a partner.

1. have a conversation in which one of you is a customer and the other a car salesman pointing out all the good things about his/her product(s).
2. give the other his/her first driving lesson, pointing out where everything is in the car and what it does.

Explain in detail:

1. how to mend a puncture on a bicycle.
2. how to change a wheel on a car.

Write a long list of things not working properly in your car for the mechanic to have a look at during its service.

Write a paragraph from a leaflet advertising your company’s latest car, motorbike or bicycle.

Write the script for a commercial advertising your company’s airline or cross-channel ferry service.
Clothes

Game

See if you can complete this crossword with the help of the clues that follow. The clues and the answers include most of the items of clothing you are likely to wear or see worn. The answers are on page 109.

Clues Across

2  The sewing round the bottom of a skirt, blouse, slacks etc. (3)
4  When you've undressed, you'll probably be this. (5)
6  A military jacket, but quite fashionable. (5)
9  A fastener that needs a hole. (6)
11  You may hear 'brassiere', but most people call it this. (3)
12  A knitted woolen jacket. (8)
15  An anorak is an example of one. (4)
17  Part of a three-piece suit. (9)
19  What a dress often used to be called and still occasionally is. (5)
21  You won't see it too often; it'll be under a shirt or top. (4)
23  If you haven't got 9 Across, this will help you to keep things together. (3)
27  Put in front of 15 Across to make one word that'll keep you warm. (4)
29  They used to be called 'knickers', but this word is taking over. (7)
31  The sole is the front part of 51 Across; this is the back. (4)
32  You'll hear people call it a sweater, a jersey and a jumper as well. (8)
35  A bathing costume (bikini for ladies, trunks for men) is now often referred to as a swim ... . (4)
36  A cardinal's robe is often ... . (3)
37  A corset and a girdle are examples of ... wear. (5)
39  Apart from on the finger, you might find a ring on the ... . (3)
41  The part of the jacket to grab if you're angry with someone. (5)
42  Black arm-... are worn as a sign of respect for the dead. (5)
43  'Tight trousers and bootlace ties were in vogue over thirty years ... .' (3)
44  Hamlet was probably wearing breeches and a chemise when he said to himself: 'To ... or not to ... .' (2)
Clothes

45 An important part of gentlemen's **morning dress**. (3-3)
46 One of a pair that children often wear on their hands. (6)
48 The currency you'd probably use to buy a 64 Across. (3)
49 If you haven't got buckles, you may need these to keep your shoes on. (5)
51 A word for a **plimsol, clog or sandal**. (4)
52 To look like a he-man, you might need ... **shoulders** for your jacket. (6)
54 A top Roman wouldn't be seen in public without one. (4)
58 It stretches from the **cuff** to the **shoulder**. (6)
59 Wear it with a 22 Down **T-shirt** to look like a French onion-seller. (5)
64 An oriental **robe**, usually worn barefoot. (6)
65 Similar to a **petticoat**, it's another example of 37 Across. (4)
67 Polish and varnish are for furniture, but also for these. (5)
68 A lady who wears a **habit**. (3)
69 Something for Hindu ladies to wear, with or without a **veil**. (4)
70 The sergeant-major on parade might wear one over his **uniform**. (4)
71 It'll cover the head; it is often part of a duffel coat. (4)
73 In America they cover a man's legs; in England they don't. (5)
74 Something like a **shawl**. (5)
75 If the woman wears the ... at home, it means she's the boss. (8)
76 It will often be worn over a pair of **shorts**: a ...-suit. (5)

**Clues Down**

1 It often follows the words: cowboy, Wellington,football. (4)
2 It might be a **boater, a bowler, a trilby, a fez**, or even a **turban**. (3)
3 A colloquial name for a **raincoat**. (3)
4 An artistic form of 4 Across. (4)
5 That rather smart **suit** could well be a ... **jacket**. (6)
7 A collar goes round this part of you. (4)
8 **An informal** but quite **elegant** variation on 9 Down and 18 Down. (6)
9 You can wear one with 53 Down. (3-3)
10 You can't get much more elegant than these, gentlemen. (5)
11 This will look good with 8 Down in the clubhouse after the game. (6)
13 Something to protect the hands of a boxer, housewife or skier. (5)
14 Something for the queen to wear when a **tiara** would be too informal. (5)
16 The number of red **shirts** in a full Manchester United **strip, not** counting substitutes' kit. (3)
18 You'll often hear a suit and ... . (3)
20 A **robe** worn by men of the church. (7)
22 Along with **check**, the most popular **pattern** on clothes. (7)
24 A fold on a skirt, dress or **gym slip**. (5)
25 What **dungarees** can do outside the kitchen, this will do inside. (5)
26 Something else you could put on instead of dungarees: an **over**... . (3)
28 A **silk fabric**, handsome jackets were made of it in 30 Down times. (6)
29 It's used on a tie or a baby's **nappy**. (3)
30 We describe **costumes and outfits** at the time of King Edward as ... . (9)
31 You might wear one in a game of cricket; you must wear one on a motor-bike; you would probably have worn one with a suit of **armour**. (6)
33 It helps you to know which way round to wear certain **articles of clothing** - stops you wearing them **back to front or inside out**. (5)
34 If you've got an ...-neck shirt on, you won't need an 18 Down. (4)
35 You might wear one in preference to **pyjamas**. (10)
36 Many soldiers' wives wore **chastity belts** during the Middle ... . (4)
37 To a large extent they have replaced **stockings and suspenders**. (6)
38 Worn on a horserider's heel to keep his horse going. (4)
39 An abbreviation for 5 Down. (2)
40 Often worn at the same time as a **dressing gown**. (8)
41 You don't see many people over sixty wearing blue ... . (5)
42 A form of 56 Down, named after a man called Strauss. (5)
43 It's part of a car, but a woman might wear it on her head. (6)
44 An engagement or a diamond one? (4)
45 The university professor may have to slip it on quite often. (4)
46 Headwear for the jockey and maybe the worker. (3)
47 What does a Scot wear under his ... ? (4)
48 If your **trousers** are this, use a belt. (5)
49 She was wearing a beautiful Japanese ... **scarf**. (4)
50 It'll cover the head; it is often part of a duffel coat. (4)
51 Take off your **dress**, put it on a **hanger**; take off your coat, put it on this. (3)
Clothes

Answers
(Across)  2  hem  4  naked  6  tunic  9  button  11  bra  12  cardigan
  15  coat  17  waistcoat  19  frock  21  vest  23  zip  27  over(coat)
  29  panties  31  heel  32  pullover  35  suit  36  red
  37  under(wear)  39  ear(ring)  41  lapel  42  bands  43  ago  44  be
  45  top  hat  46  mitten  48  yen  49  laces  51  shoe  52  padded
  54  toga  58  sleeve  59  beret  61  a  garment  64  kimono  65  slip
  67  nails  68  nun  69  sari  70  sash  72  grip  73  pants  74  stole
  75  trousers  76  track(suit)
(Down)  1  boot  2  hat  3  mac  4  nude  5  dinner (jacket)  7  neck
  8  cravat  9  bow  tie  10  tails  11  blazer  13  glove  14  crown
  16  ten  18  tie  20  cassock  22  striped  24  pleat  25  apron
  26  (over)aU  28  velvet  29  pin  30  Edwardian  31  helmet
  33  label  34  open(-neck)  38  slippers  40  Ages  47  tights
  50  spur  53  DJ  55  slippers  56  jeans  57  Levis  59  bonnet
  60  ring  62  gown  63  cap  64  kilt  66  loose  69  silk
  71  hood  73  peg

Practice

[1] Write or discuss the answers to the questions below.

1  What (exactly) did you wear to the last three parties you have been to?
2  What (again exactly) would you wear on each of the occasions listed below?
   a an open-air rock concert
   b a formal garden party
   c a new discotheque’s first night
   d a summer afternoon on the river
   e a quiet evening at home
   f a barbecue on the beach
3  In which periods of history do you think men and/or women dressed especially
   attractively? Describe what you like about these clothes.
4  What clothes have you seen in the street or in shops recently that really appealed to
   you?
5  What clothes have you bought over the past year? How often have you worn them?
   Do you still like them? What condition are they in now?

[2] Write, in dialogue form, a conversation between a teenager (claiming the freedom to
   wear modern styles and colours) and his/her grandmother (complaining about a loss
   of elegance).

[3] Write out the shopping list of all the clothes you need for your new baby.

[4] Write a (full) list of clothes to take with you on a four-week holiday touring the
   United States.

   Add here any other words or expressions that you meet to do with clothes.
Reading 1

There are a lot of quite common expressions in this text. Make a special effort to remember them and to use them regularly in your English.

As you read:

1. Write out the list of food and drink the writer's father-in-law made before the wedding celebrations. Don't panic! He was very rich!
2. Note down the phrases which are clearly exaggerated.

There was, quite simply, masses of the stuff—enough to feed an army, or sufficient to keep a largish family going for a year at least — and it wasn't only the staggering quantity. There was an enormously wide range of dishes, ranging from huge stuffed olives to king-sized prawns, from giant-sized crabs to quite massive crepes.

The guests - and there were millions of them all over the place - had a choice of a thousand and one different cheeses, no fewer than fifty different salads, dozens of pates and scores of little savouries.

The meat - literally tons of it - had been cut into exceedingly large slices, an inch thick, and broad enough to overhang any normal-sized dinner plate. There was also plenty of fish, including a monumental pile of smoked salmon and an immense dishful of sea-food, plus an abundance of poultry and game.

There was an excessive amount of alcohol: two containers of giant proportions brimful of punch, (their combined volumes must have exceeded a hundred cubic feet), countless magnums of champagne and innumerable three-litre bottles of sparkling wine. There were gallons of the stuff.

The fruit salad was served in a colossal dish, several feet in diameter. Into it had gone enormous cherries almost the size of oranges and gigantic oranges as big as footballs, bananas nearly a foot in length and mammoth melons like footballs. A substantial quantity of liquor brandy had also found its way in.

The cake was a mountain, consisting of a large number of sections, each providing ample portions for a couple of rugby teams. Altogether it was over three metres in height and getting on for a metre in width. The layers of cream on each block were some three centimetres thick.

Despite numerous predictions that far too much food had been prepared, very little was left at the end. True, a fair amount of cheese remained - a reasonable proportion of which was fortunately still usable - but apart from that, hardly anything: a few crumbs of cake, one tiny piece of fish, a minute portion of ham, a negligible amount of jelly, a teeny-weeny drop of punch, but not a trace of the fruit salad in the bottom of the bowl.

There was a great deal of lengthy speculation as to the astronomical sum total of the cost; it was never disclosed. A spokesman for my new father-in-law said, 'It wasn't small', and my mother-in-law still reminds me occasionally that it was 'quite a few pounds' worth'.
Game

The size, strength or capacity of things can be measured in many different ways. Cover the column on the right and complete the following sentences with an appropriate word or phrase of measurement or size.

1. It's just a normal family car: a five-seater.
2. He's bought himself a new 750 c.c. Kawasaki.
3. My old van has a maximum speed of just over 50 m.p.h.

4. We really need another 100-watt bulb.
5. We could also do with an extra 13-proof plug.
6. This 25-year-old whisky is 85% proof.
7. Her wedding ring is 24-carat gold.
8. It's over 85 degrees Fahrenheit in the shade today.

9. We sailed across the Atlantic in a 20,000-tonner.
10. The ship was travelling at an average speed of 28 knots.
11. Winds of gale force 9 were reported.
12. The Krakatoa explosion (1883) happened too long ago for the intensity of its sound to be measured in decibels.
13. The recent earthquake gave a reading of 7 on the Richter scale.

14. The Empire State is a 102-storey building.
15. My parents live in a two-bedroom flat.
17. The town has a population of 24,000.
18. We have our own 60-piece orchestra.
19. The article in the newspaper ran to four columns.
20. Hong Kong has the highest population of any country in the world.

21. My girlfriend's measurements are 38 25 38.
22. She passed her final exams with a grade 3.
23. The Tower of Pisa leans at an angle of several degrees to the vertical.
24. Rank in the services is usually indicated by the number of stripes on one's sleeve.
25. Parts of the Pacific Ocean are known to be well over 30,000 feet deep.

26. Britain has a two-tier system of central government consisting of the House of Commons and the House of Lords.
27. The people voted to remain in the Common Market by a two-to-one ratio.
28. Redundancies are being announced now at a rate of a thousand a day.

29. Most symphonies have four movements.
30. Songs that have more than four verses are often too long to be recorded commercially.
31. A number of rock-groups now own their own 16 or 24-track recording equipment.
32. The man thought to have been the heaviest ever is reported to have been over 70 stone in weight.
33. The final of the tennis championship — men's singles was the best of five.

34. The 800 metres is normally a two-lap race.
35. The duke and duchess's farm extends over an area of 640 acres.
36. After doing that exercise I feel in need of a whisky rather than a .....
Reading 2

Many quantities are set for us by the way various products are prepared or packaged for sale. Read through the shopping list, then test yourself on the words by covering first the right-hand column then the left-hand one.

Who said you don’t get much for your money nowadays? For less than £300 you could buy a whole case of best-quality champagne. Or you could buy all of the following and still have some change.

- a string of imitation pearls
- a bar of soap
- a family-size tube of toothpaste
- a sample sachet of shampoo
- a loaf of wholemeal bread
- a carton of low-calorie yoghurt
- a 500g tin of baked beans
- a packet of salt and vinegar flavoured crisps
- a bunch of grapes
- a pack of eight different breakfast cereals
- a few sheets of greaseproof paper
- a pair of sheets
- a pad of writing paper
- a roll of toilet paper
- a box of matches
- a bundle of firewood
- a sack of coal
- a bottle of cognac
- a barrel of English beer
- a can of Australian lager
- a crate of brown ale (24 bottles)
- a few sticks of celery
- a jar of pickled onions
- a 5lb bag of potatoes
- a 50p book of stamps
- a giant-sized block of ice-cream
- a set of spanners

Practice

The words sort, kind and type could be used to complete many of the questions below. Naturally enough, though, we have a number of other words which might be used. Use one of the eight words listed below to complete the sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>brand</th>
<th>family</th>
<th>model</th>
<th>race</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>branch</td>
<td>species</td>
<td>style</td>
<td>group</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. What... of astro-physics is Aunt Sally studying?
2. Which... of reptile would you least like to have in your bedroom?
3. Which Fiat... is supposed to be the most economical to run?
4. What... of music was popular before The Beatles?
5. Which... of soap-powder do you usually use?
6. What age-... are most of the unemployed in?
7. What... of people did the English descend from?
8. What... of animals does the cheetah belong to?
Here are eight more words and eight more sentences for you to complete.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>category</th>
<th>part</th>
<th>grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>breed</td>
<td>department</td>
<td>bracket</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. What... of speech is the word 'down'?
2. What... of dog is least trouble to look after?
3. Which ... of petrol do you use, two star or four star?
4. What salary-... do most teachers fall into?
5. Which ... of your branch are you working in at the moment?
6. What... of car would you say is the most reliable?
7. What... of corporal punishment do you personally hate most?
8. What... of book would you list *War and Peace* under: fact or fiction?

Think of a big city that you know or have seen photographs of in books. Describe the impression it made on you when you first arrived there.

Discuss why English is in some ways so easy and in others so difficult.

Imagine you had a dream last night which involved a horrible creature of gigantic proportions. Describe the monster.

Imagine you are taking part in a meeting to discuss the siting of a new airport near your home. Consider the possible effects of the noise and the traffic on the local population and the countryside. Write a statement which clearly expresses your feelings and views.

You have just visited a Third World country with appalling problems. Write a one-minute speech for a radio news programme on the country's limited resources and enormous needs.

Write down, after discussion with a partner if possible, a list of all the things (including food) that you will need to put in the nuclear fallout shelter you have just built.

Write the first minute of your Olympic Games Opening Ceremony commentary in which you describe the scene in front of you.

Add here any other words or expressions you may meet.
Shapes

Game

Decide which of these shapes describes each chocolate. Then look at the picture and try to describe the shape of each chocolate without the help of phrases 1 - 14.

1 pyramid-shaped
tangerine treat
coffee cream
hazelnut hat
strawberry surprise

2 spherical
lime limousine
orange delight
lemon lovely

3 a perfect cube
peppermint pearl
nougat novelty
brazilnut bonanza

4 crescent-shaped
toffee truffle
blackcurrant bliss
almond attraction

5 a spiral
marzipan marvel
caramel castle

6 pear-shaped
toffee truffle
blackcurrant bliss
almond attraction

7 conical, a cone

8 oblong, with a convex top
9 rectangular, with a concave top
10 round, with a serrated edge
11 semi-circular, half-moon shaped
12 square, with an uneven surface
13 cylindrical, log-shaped
14 triangular, three-sided

Practice

And now some sophisticated work on the English alphabet. Which word (in capital letters) is being described below? Describe other words in the same way. When you can do this, you are doing very well with the vocabulary of this unit.

First letter
One full-length perpendicular line is joined at the top and at its centre point by two parallel lines, the former slightly longer that the latter, extending to the right horizontally.

Second letter
A symmetrical, wedge-shaped figure: two straight but oblique lines slanting down to the base from a common point at the top; these are bisected by a single horizontal line.

Third letter
A long vertical line is connected at two points - at the top and halfway down - to a curved, semi-circular line running to the right. From the centre intersection a sloping line drops to the baseline at an angle of 45 degrees to the perpendicular, again to the right.
Shapes

Match the adjectives on the left with a suitable noun on the right.

1 hollow  skin
2 rough  roadsign
3 pointed  swimming pool
4 oval  shoes
5 triangular  roof
6 sloping  cheeks
7 sharp  staircase
8 spiral  blade

Discuss or write the answers to these two questions.

1 Do you like modern art? Can you describe any modern works of art that you either really liked or strongly disliked when you saw them?
2 Where have all the curves gone - from cars, cups, watches, buildings, phones, bottles and clothes? How true is it that circles and curves are disappearing and giving way to more angular shapes? Give examples of this trend and any exceptions that you can think of to support your argument.

Game

Finally, a drawing game. Try to draw each of the items below, spending a maximum of three seconds on each.

1 a dotted line  7 a rough sea  13 rolling hills
2 a crooked line  8 a steep hill  14 wavy hair
3 an octagon  9 a bumpy road  15 a meandering river
4 a pointed chin  10 a sharp bend  16 undulating countryside
5 a jagged edge  11 a gentle curve  17 a calm sea
6 a hollow tree  12 a smooth surface  18 an oval face

Add here any more words about shapes as you meet them.
Substances, materials and textures

Quiz

[1] Even if chemistry lessons are a thing of the (distant) past for you, try this exercise on elements, metals and gases. Cover the column on the right and see if you can say which elements, metals and gases these symbols stand for. Each one has a simple clue beside it to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Clue</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ag</td>
<td>A twenty-fifth wedding anniversary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zn</td>
<td>A bluish-white metal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Al</td>
<td>Light to carry and silvery to look at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>Named after a planet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au</td>
<td>An Olympic winner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sn</td>
<td>A can is made of it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ca</td>
<td>Think of your teeth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Think of matches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CO</td>
<td>Breathing out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pu</td>
<td>Nuclear power can come from this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fe</td>
<td>The most widely used metal of all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pt</td>
<td>Describes a particular type of blonde hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Think of the bomb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>Gives out light in the dark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hg</td>
<td>Used in thermometers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ni</td>
<td>And an American coin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>Life-supporting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>80% of the air</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cu</td>
<td>Maybe the first metal used by man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NaCl</td>
<td>Commonly known as salt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Does that bring back memories of acids, alkalis and smelly experiments? If you're in good form, try these. What alloys or other substances will you get if you mix the following? (Keep the right-hand column covered.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alloys or Substances</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Copper and tin</td>
<td>Bronze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper and zinc</td>
<td>Brass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron and carbon</td>
<td>Steel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lime, clay, sand and water</td>
<td>Cement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The above plus gravel</td>
<td>Concrete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Practice

In a recent nightmare, my grandson was saying to his girlfriend: 'Your hands are like vinyl, the skin on your face is like purest acrylic and your hair is like real polystyrene'.

How do you feel about recent changes in the materials that things are made of? Read the text on the next page. Decide which of the items in the right-hand column have their advantages and which items in the left-hand column you really prefer. Give your reasons.
Substances, materials and textures

The old

lace handkerchiefs
satin bed-linen
cotton pyjamas
tweed jackets
woollen cardigans
flannel trousers
leather shoes
feather (preferably down) beds
velvet curtains
marble floors
solid wood furniture
(of teak, pine, mahogany, oak)
cast iron pots and pans
china tea-service
porcelain dinner plates
steel cutlery
brown paper
wooden boats

The new

paper tissues
nylon sheets
polyester shirts
denim tops
acrylic sweaters
cord(uroy) slacks
suede uppers, man-made soles
polyurethane-foam pillows
vinyl upholstery
formica worktop, polystyrene tiles
chipboard units
hardboard shelves
stainless steel saucepans
smoked-glass cups
enamel mugs
plastic spoons
polythene bags
fibreglass yachts

[2] Most materials are happy to act as adjectives as well as nouns.

Sheffield produces a lot of steel. It has quite a large steel industry. I need a steel bar to put across this cage-door.

Most materials, however, can also add a letter or two to make another adjective with a different, more figurative meaning.

He gave me a steely look, (a bit like steel)

Cover the second and fourth columns below. Choose nouns to go with the two lists of adjectives, then see how many of yours are the same as the ones the book suggests.

1 a leather jacket a leathery steak
2 rubber gloves a rubbery lips
3 a glass eye a glassy look
4 a silk scarf silky hair
5 a grass skirt a grassy slope
6 a mud hut muddy boots
7 a stone wall a stony silence
8 a skin disease a skinny person
9 a tin drum a tinny sound from a cheap radio
10 an ice cube an icy stare
11 a wire coat-hanger a wiry marathon runner
12 an oil well an oily rag
13 a silver chain silvery hair
14 a meat pie a meaty discussion
15 a gold tooth a golden opportunity
16 a metal container a metallic voice
17 a milk bottle a milky complexion
18 a smoke signal a smoky room
19 a wooden leg a wooden actor
20 a grease gun a greasy rag
21 a soap bubble soapy water
22 a woollen jumper a woolly argument

Note the two exceptions: a wooden leg, a wooden actor (unnatural); a woollen jumper, a woolly argument (vague, confused).


Practice

Discuss or write the answers to these questions.

1. Are precious metals and stones — diamonds, emeralds, rubies, sapphires, etc. — as beautiful as their prices suggest?
2. How have materials for clothes, household goods, furniture etc. changed during your lifetime? In what ways are these changes for the better and in what ways are they changes for the worse?
3. What is being done in your country to counter the dangers of certain materials in use today: asbestos, lead, DDT, nuclear waste, nicotine?

2. Write a paragraph from your latest short story in which the hero, blindfolded, stumbles through a cardboard box factory in an attempt to escape from his pursuers. Describe his feelings as he comes into contact with various substances and surfaces during the chase.

Add here any more words about substances as you meet them.
Colours

There are an enormous number of words and expressions describing colours in English. A lot are mentioned in this unit. Try to remember and begin to use those of particular use to you.

Game

[1] You and your partner have been invited to attend a dinner in aid of charity. It is not an occasion for a suit and an evening dress, but you can't go in jeans and a T-shirt. Below, for each garment you are going to wear, you are given a choice of four colours. Choose an outfit for both of you which you think will look attractive.

For him
jacket: navy blue white dark brown crimson
trousers: royal blue khaki fawn sea green
tie: multi-coloured yellow bright orange emerald green
shoes: reddish buff peach black

For her
skirt: deep blue russet lavender pale blue
blouse: salmon pink tangerine lilac pearl
jacket: olive green mauve rose yellowish
(tights: flesh-coloured tan bright pink turquoise)
shoes: rust-coloured violet greeny-blue jet black

You and your partner are going to decorate two of the rooms in a flat. From the alternatives below, choose a colour scheme for each room.

The kitchen
ceiling: pure white greyish light green amber
walls: brick red sandy-coloured steel blue lemon
tiles: whitish pitch black shocking pink brownish
woodwork: reddish-brown coffee-coloured smokey-grey scarlet

The bedroom
ceiling: brilliant white off-white lime green sky blue
walls: copper dazzling white beige chocolate
woodwork: purple cream-coloured bronze straw-coloured
carpet: mottled blue and maroon charcoal grey
(bottle green golden
greeny-blue
indigo
gingery red

Practice

Colours love to be used idiomatically. Cover the column on the right and complete each sentence with the appropriate colour.

1 He was ... with envy as he watched his friend riding his new bike.
2 When his father told him later he couldn't have a new bike, he went... with rage.
3 I'm all... and ... after being in that crowded underground train for half an hour.
Colours

4 The student went as ... as a beetroot when the lecturer gave her one of his famous ... looks. red
5 You can be sure to find quite a few ... movies in that ... light district. black
6 I can't really believe that Nero was as ... as he is painted. red
7 I felt sorry for those ... recruits, getting Sergeant 'Squash 'em' Sanders on their first day. green
8 You're ...! You're just afraid of what your wife will do to you if you do. yellow
9 I feel so ... when I see you, hand-in-hand with another man. blue
10 My fingers were ... with cold and I imagine my face was as ... as a sheet. white
11 I need your resignation in ... and ... of course. black, white
12 She came out of that ... comedy about making pies from murder victims with her face a ghastly shade of ... green
13 You've got to stop looking at the world through ... tinted spectacles, stop considering these matters in terms of ... and ..., and start realising there's a huge ... area in between. black, white
14 My father-in-law was hundreds of pounds in the ... after paying for our splendid ... wedding. red

Each of the concepts on the left can be expressed with a word or phrase that includes the colour given. Cover the right-hand column and see if you think of each idiom.

Black
1 a person who refuses his union's instructions to strike a blackleg
2 a member of the family who fails to live up to the others' standards a black sheep
3 illegitimate trading, perhaps of goods in short supply the black market
4 a number of people under suspicion, or in danger of unfavourable treatment a blacklist

Red
5 caught in the act, in the middle of a crime caught red-handed
6 a special, very important occasion a red-letter day
7 an excessive amount of bureaucracy red-tape
8 a very special welcome for a very special guest the red carpet

Blue
9 very, very rarely once in a blue moon
10 suddenly and unexpectedly out of the blue
11 those doing manual, not clerical or administrative work blue-collar workers
12 someone of noble birth, an aristocrat someone with blue blood

Write or discuss the answers to these questions.

1 Which of the following do you prefer? Why?
a sunrise or sunset?
b April or October?
c black and white photos or colour ones?
d pastel colours in rooms or strong, bright colours?
e paintings by six-, eleven- or sixteen-year-olds?
[4] What is your favourite colour - and be as precise as you can - for each of the items below?

- a cars
- b team sports kit
- c soap
- d personal writing paper
- e front doors
- f armchairs
- g sheets
- h handbags
- i swimming costumes
- j dinner plates
- k toothbrushes
- l ink in a felt-tip pen

[5] Write, in dialogue form, a conversation in a shop. A customer is trying to get the assistant to mix exactly the shade of paint that he or she wants to decorate the sitting room walls.

- Add here any other words or expressions about colours as you meet them.
The condition things are in

Reading

Most of the things around us are not in perfect condition. They're in some way defective, flawed or damaged. Here is an undiscovered masterpiece by singer-songwriter Dod Billion to help you with the vocabulary on this subject:

Without-you-it's-just-impossible Blues
Music and lyrics by Dod Billion

Our toothpaste tube is leaking,
My razor blades are blunt.
The hot tap keeps on squeaking
And the cold one's back to front.
The bathroom door won't lock
And the windows are all stuck.
The water-pipes are blocked
And the basin's full of muck.

(Chorus)
I don't know what to do
Without you.
I don't know how to do it.
Without you it's
Just impossible Blues.

All our food's gone stale
And the fruit's all squashed.
The dishwasher's failed
So the plates are unwashed.
The kitchen table's split
And the saucers are all chipped,
And the curtains are twisted
And the table-cloth is ripped.

I don't know what to do
Without you.
I don't know how to do it.
Without you it's
Just impossible Blues.

All our records are scratched,
One or two have been smashed,
All our glasses are cracked,
And my homemade beer's flat.
The cutlery is tarnished
The liquidiser's faulty,
The shelves are still unvarnished,
They're beginning to warp, you see.

I don't know what to do
Without you.
I don't know how to do it.
Without you it's
Just impossible Blues.

All the woodwork is rotten,
And the metalwork's rusty,
Believe me, I've forgotten
What it's like under the dust.
The car doesn't go,
It just splutters and jerks,
And the battery's very low
So the lights don't work.
The condition things are in

The windscreen is shattered
And the bodywork is dented.
The seats are in tatters
And the steering-wheel's bent.

I don't know what to do
Without you.
I don't know how to do it.
Without you it's
Just impossible Blues.

My favourite white shirt
Is marked and stained.
You can't see it for dirt
And the dirt's ingrained.
My socks have got holes in them,
And most of them are torn.
My shoes have got no soles on them,
The heels are badly worn.
My trousers are creased
And my jacket is faded.
It's covered in grease;
And I feel so jaded.

I don't know what to do
Without you.
I don't know how to do it.
Without you it's
Just impossible Blues.

(Extra verse)
My life's in a mess
It's all twisted and tangled.
I feel so depressed
As if I'd been mangled.
I'm absolutely shattered.
I feel so beaten and battered.
My dreams are in tatters;
The only thing that matters -
Is that I'm not with you,
And I don't know what to do.
I don't know how to do it.
Without you it's
Just impossible Blues.

Practice

[1] Apart from the things that Dod sings about in the song, what other things could be described with the following adjectives? Try and think of four items for each.

leaking a pen, a bottle, a tap, a roof

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 blunt</th>
<th>5 chipped</th>
<th>9 twisted</th>
<th>13 blocked</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 split</td>
<td>6 tarnished</td>
<td>10 faulty</td>
<td>14 warped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 rotten</td>
<td>7 dented</td>
<td>11 bent</td>
<td>15 stained</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 torn</td>
<td>8 creased</td>
<td>12 faded</td>
<td>16 tangled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[2] Many of the words in this unit do not only describe physical states and conditions. Decide what they mean in each of the sentences below. Then write a similar sentence of your own to illustrate the meaning of each word.

1 This defeat has dented United's hopes of the championship.
2 You've shattered all my illusions about him.
3 There seem to be leaks of official information nearly every day.
4 Hopes of finding any survivors have faded.
5 Her reputation has been tarnished for ever.
6 He's got a rather warped and twisted sense of humour.
7 My German's a bit rusty, I must confess.
8 I got a bit stuck on number 3 in this exercise.
The condition things are in

[3] Write or talk about topics 1 and 2.

1 the state of three possessions of yours which are not in perfect condition
2 the untidiest person you know

[4] Write or act out a conversation in which you, as a guest at a hotel, complain to the manager about the appalling state of your room.

[5] Write a letter to your landlord. Complain that everything in the flat you rent from him is still in the same poor condition as it was the last time you asked for some improvements to be made.

• Add here any other words or expressions about conditions of things as you meet them.
Parts and components

This unit has two functions. It is both a quick revision of numerous items already mentioned in this book and an introduction to some more bits and pieces that go to make up a number of everyday objects.

Quiz

1 Below you see groups of four words. In each case, the words are all parts of an everyday object. Decide what each object is.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>dial</th>
<th>receiver</th>
<th>mouthpiece</th>
<th>hook</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>handlebars</td>
<td>pedals</td>
<td>chain</td>
<td>valve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>tap</td>
<td>plug</td>
<td>overflow</td>
<td>pipes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>bowl</td>
<td>cistern</td>
<td>flush</td>
<td>seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>lens</td>
<td>shutter</td>
<td>flash</td>
<td>meter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>knob</td>
<td>aerial</td>
<td>screen</td>
<td>switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>plug</td>
<td>socket</td>
<td>lead</td>
<td>wires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>hands</td>
<td>winder</td>
<td>face</td>
<td>strap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>buckle</td>
<td>laces</td>
<td>tongue</td>
<td>stitching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>lining</td>
<td>hem</td>
<td>seam</td>
<td>pleat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>petal</td>
<td>stem</td>
<td>seed</td>
<td>leaf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>flap</td>
<td>slot</td>
<td>drawer</td>
<td>tray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>keys</td>
<td>ribbon</td>
<td>golf ball</td>
<td>cover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>roots</td>
<td>trunk</td>
<td>twig</td>
<td>branch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>neck</td>
<td>top</td>
<td>cork</td>
<td>label</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>handle</td>
<td>latch</td>
<td>hinges</td>
<td>frame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>wing</td>
<td>tail</td>
<td>nose</td>
<td>fuselage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>boot</td>
<td>clutch</td>
<td>gears</td>
<td>brake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>lid</td>
<td>handle</td>
<td>spout</td>
<td>brim (or rim)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>cuff</td>
<td>sleeve</td>
<td>button</td>
<td>collar</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Guess what is being described in each of the paragraphs below.

1 It is composed of two thin metal arms welded at one end to a short rod. The rod allows the two metal strips to move together and away from each other. One arm is some twelve centimetres in length and ends in a pin with a sharp point. The other is shorter and is joined at the end to a thick metal ring which has a hole through it and a thread around the inside. A small disc or wheel can be screwed over it.

2 Well, for one thing, there should be a plastic cover clipped on to the base here, and more important, this spring, the coil here, is broken. So when you press this plate here, the two bars go down into the holes, but they don't come back up again.

3 Right, I've got all the poles, the pegs are in that bag plus the extra brackets and the clips for the flaps, you've got the ropes there, haven't you? I think we're about ready to go.
Farts and components

Practice

Describe three everyday objects so accurately that somebody listening to you or reading your paragraphs could guess what you are talking about. Use item 1 in the exercise above to get some ideas.

List all the things you can think of that are missing or need repairing around your house. Work out how much it would cost you to replace or repair them all.

Write a list of contents to put in a do-it-yourself plumber's kit.

Write instructions on how to put together a self-assembly piece of furniture.

Write, in dialogue form, a conversation between an angry customer who is taking back a three-month-old dress or suit. It is in a terrible state. The assistant has to try and make excuses for the state of the hem, the seams, the lining, the cuffs, the button-holes and so on.

If you come across any more words about parts of everyday objects, make a note of them here:
What things do

There are over a hundred verbs - mainly intransitive - in this unit. You may need to work on the unit in small chunks or else come back and do it again several times in order to remember most of the new vocabulary well enough to use it in conversation or in writing.

Reading 1

Read this dramatic text on destruction, bombs, smoke and fire.

The first bomb **went off** at 2.36. The **explosion** **wrecked** three stores just off the main square, **destroying** several vehicles and **rocking** even the tallest building in the city. The pedestrian precinct **caught fire** at once, **bursting into flames**, as if someone had **set fire to** it with a giant torch, and sending clouds of smoke shooting up into the sky. We could hear, rather than see, a number of other houses **crumbling**.

The fire began to **spread**. Smoke was soon **pouring** out of the buildings in the next block, **hovering** over the skyscrapers and then **drifting** away towards the sea. We saw one huge office block **collapse** at the base and then quite simply **fall apart**.

The smoke was just beginning to **clear** and the flames **die down** when the second bomb **exploded**. Immediately the air **thickened** again as clouds of even blacker smoke **billowed** out of a hotel nearby.

When the smoke finally **disappeared**, half the city had **vanished**. Hours later the fire was still **smouldering** and tiny **wisps of smoke** were **rising from the ashes**. The city **lay in ruins**. Then Robert Redford and Jane Fonda appeared, and you knew that everything was going to be all right.

Now have a look at this 'light-filled' letter.

Dear Roland,
What do you think of this?

**Shot One (5 sees.)**
The sun is **shining** - the mountainside is **bathed in sunshine**.
The freshly-fallen snow is **glistening**.
A couple are standing in ski-clothes, cheeks **glowing**.
The woman is smiling, teeth **gleaming**.
**Narrator:** A ray of sunshine.

**Shot Two (7 sees.)**
**Moonlight.** The stars are **twinkling**.
The rippling water of the lake is **shimmering**.
The same couple are in fur coats, standing by the lake, **reflected** in water.
The woman is still smiling - a **dazzling** smile, teeth **gleaming**.
**Narrator:** A radiant smile.

**Shot Three (8 sees.)**
Picadilly Circus with the **flashing** neon lights of the advertisements.
Camera moves through the **glare** of car headlights into the interior of a Rolls Royce.
The same couple are sitting in back, their **eyes dancing**.
What things do

The woman is wearing a sparkling diamond necklace, her teeth still gleaming.

Narrator: A ray of hope.

Shot Four (10 sees.)
The couple are at a table in a high-class restaurant, illuminated by glittering chandeliers and flickering candles.
The woman has a beaming smile on her face, her teeth still gleaming.
Narrator: Now ... New! Improved! Whoosh! For you! Yes, for you! Now! New! Whoosh! The toothpaste of the stars!

See you for the filming on Saturday. Don't forget to ask Robert and Jane.
Regards, Harvey

Read this extract from a diary. As you read, guess where the writer was at the time.

Monday
It's been pouring with rain all day.

Tuesday
It's been bucketing down again from morning to night.

Wednesday
Another rainy day. It hasn't stopped once. I got drenched when I ran across the road to the corner shop. My clothes were absolutely soaked; soaked to the skin I was.

Thursday
This is quite a storm! The water has come up so far, it's beginning to lap around people's doorsteps. It's already covering all the pavements and swirling round the blocked-up drains.

Friday
It's like a river outside. Water is streaming through the streets, cascading over buses and cars, sweeping everything along its path. Earlier I noticed a kitchen sink floating past; it sank within a few seconds, though.

Saturday
Water is gushing into the ground floor of people's homes and spraying the upstairs windows. Aaron phoned to say that his roof was leaking, that enormous raindrops were splashing onto his window-sills and dripping on the carpet, and that water was trickling down all his walls. I would have liked to help, but...

Sunday
It's still drizzling, even now. When I think of the trouble waiting for those people - horrible brown mud oozing under their doors and submerging all their furniture - I'm glad I saw that advertisement for this ark.

Practice 1

Which of the words below do you associate with items a - d?
a destruction b water c light d fire

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trickle</td>
<td>drenched</td>
<td>crumble</td>
<td>shimmer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drizzle</td>
<td>smoulder</td>
<td>wrecked</td>
<td>soaked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ripple</td>
<td>glow</td>
<td>glisten</td>
<td>cascade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>splash</td>
<td>float</td>
<td>collapse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Study and practice

The fourth and last text is on what cars do, or at least, what my car does. Read the text and try to guess the meaning of the verb that should be in each of the gaps. Then look at the list of verbs below the text and choose one to fill each gap.

I don’t really mind my car ... two or three times every morning when it’s cold, ... after a few miles so that I have to stop and let the engine cool down, ... every month or two around town, only ... fifteen miles to the gallon, ... to the right every time I brake, ... whenever the roads are wet, ... oil and ... the rain in, but I do object to it ... of petrol on the motorway, in the middle of nowhere. I’m seriously thinking of getting rid of it and getting another one.

letting overheating losing stalling breaking down doing skidding veering running out

Practice 2

Tell a partner or write about a road accident that you have been involved in or a witness to.

Write or act out a conversation in which you and a friend both insist that your car is worse and more unreliable than the other’s. (How many times has it broken down this year? How many new parts have you had put in? How much has it cost? What faults has it still got?)

Game

Have a look at the way this verb-game works. Read down the columns. (Notice how flexible in meaning a lot of English verbs are.) Then try to play the game yourself, starting with one of the verbs in this unit.

| Things move | Buildings wobble | Roads bend |
| The earth moves | Buildings fall down | Rubber bends |
| The earth rotates | Leaves fall | Rubber burns |
| Wheels rotate | Leaves turn red | Flames burn |
| Wheels spin | The tide turns | Flames dance |
| The earth spins | The tide comes in | Dancers dance |
| The earth revolves | Fashions come in | Dancers rock and roll |
| Some doors rotate | Fashions change | Ships rock and roll |
| Some doors slide | The wind changes | Ships sink |
| Land slides sometimes | The wind gets up | Metal sinks in water |
| Land subsides | A storm gets up | Metal expands |
| Noise subsides | A storm breaks | Our lungs expand |
| Noise grows | Waves break | Our lungs contract |
| Flowers grow | Waves erode land | Metal contracts |
| Flowers fade | Rust erodes metal | Metal cools |
| Colours fade | Rust spreads | Coffee cools |
| Colours run | Butter spreads | Coffee spills |
| Buses run | Butter congeals | Liquids spill |
| Buses stop - sometimes | Blood congeals | Liquids solidify |
| Clocks stop | Blood flows | Some gases solidify |
| Alarm clocks go off | Water flows | Gas can escape |
| Cakes go off-ugh! | Water evaporates | Heat can escape |
| Cakes rise - or should | Liquids evaporate | Heat melts snow |
| The sun rises | Liquids freeze | Snow melts |
| The sun sets | Rivers freeze | Snow thaws |
| Jellies set | Rivers meander | Ice thaws |
| Jellies wobble | Roads meander | Ice cracks |
What things do

Ceilings crack
Ceilings leak
Pens leak
Pens write
People write
People move
Things move

Practice 3

What do these items do? Match each thing with an appropriate verb from the right-hand column. Be careful! The verbs are not in the right order.

1 a clock  rings
2 a volcano  flows
3 a kettle  bounces
4 a bell  flushes
5 a ball  erupts
6 a violin string  swings
7 a toilet  stretches
8 a pendulum  boils
9 a river  strikes
10 elastic  vibrates

[2] How do the items on the left start - as far as we are concerned? As above, match left with right, one verb per noun.

1 a bird  sets sail
2 an aeroplane  conies out
3 a flower  arises
4 a plant  takes root
5 a ship  falls
6 day  breaks
7 a problem  takes off
8 night  breaks out
9 a war  conies up
10 the moon  hatches

Practice 4

Describe the sights and sounds you experienced as you witnessed the following natural disasters. Keep your English simple and clear.

1 an avalanche
2 an earthquake
3 a hurricane
4 a tidal wave

Explain the processes below as if you were talking to a six-year-old. Remember to keep your English clear and simple.

1 how electricity works
2 how the earth moves round the sun
3 how blood moves around our bodies
4 gravity

Describe the plot of a disaster movie you remember seeing, mentioning some particularly memorable scenes in greater detail.
Discuss or describe in writing the rather special qualities required by reporters and correspondents who are sent here, there and everywhere to cover the world's trouble spots.

Write an entry for your diary as you crossed the Atlantic in a small boat and the weather turned nasty.

Write a paragraph from your first romantic novel, in which you describe sunrise in the mountains.

In your new capacity as reporter on the local newspaper, write an article on the warehouse fire you were sent out to cover last night.

Write part of the letter you write to a newspaper to complain about the sensational and undignified way in which tragedies and disasters are presented on TV news programmes.

Add here any other verbs you meet which describe what things do.
Noises things make

Game

We frequently find it difficult to describe a sound precisely. Notice how often English speakers say: There was a sort of bang or I heard a kind of crack. However, there is clearly a difference between a thud and a squeak, a rattle and a roar. One thing which will also help you is that most of the words of this kind can act as both a noun and a verb.

Try, in each section often items below, to find a sound on the right that can be caused by each item in the left-hand column. (Most of these words can be used as nouns and verbs, which is something!)

1 sack of potatoes falling from a great height  creak
2 bacon frying in the pan  rustle
3 a loose floorboard or door that needs oiling  bang
4 leaves in the breeze  screech
5 a clock  thud
6 keys in a pocket  tick
7 a bomb  sizzle
8 wind through the trees  purr
9 a well-tuned Rolls Royce engine  jingle
10 tyres when one brakes suddenly  whistle

11 kettle boiling  plop
12 wine glasses or little bells  grate
13 knives being scraped together  hum
14 a sugar lump dropped into the tea  splash
15 something heavy dropping into the sea  pop
16 something’s loose under the car bonnet  jangle
17 the quiet, background sound of a fridge  click
18 the old jailer’s keys  tinkle
19 champagne corks coming out  rattle
20 a light being switched on  hiss

21 the high-pitched sound of a factory machine  crackle
22 rain on the roof  squeak
23 wood burning on the fire  swish
24 a tap that can’t be turned right off  squeal
25 a whip or a bone breaking  crash
26 curtains in a draught  whine
27 little pigs or again tyres after sudden braking  roar
28 lions or a powerful engine  crack
29 mice or the chair leg moving on the floor  drip
30 a car going into a wall  patter

Practice

III List other things or events which might cause each of the noises and sounds listed above.

[2] Explain what causes noise pollution in our society and suggest some remedies if you can.
Describe the sounds and noises around us that you hate most and that you find attractive.

If you are working in a group, act out a meeting at which two of you are factory managers and the other two are representatives of the workforce who are unhappy about their working conditions in the factory. If you are working alone, write what you would say at this meeting. Choose whether you wish to be a manager or an employee. The main grievances are the number of hours worked without a break, the volume of noise in the factory and the lack of anywhere relaxing to spend one's time off.

Write a paragraph from your new novel, *A Ghost Story*, in which the heroine is woken up at three in the morning by (the ghost of your choice).

Branching out into screenplay work, write a scene (without any dialogue) for your new horror movie. It's set in an old country house at midnight, during a thunderstorm.

Write an article on one of the following topics.
1 the experiences of a soldier (in the trenches) during the First World War
2 what you could hear when you stood still and listened at a funfair

More noises exist. If you hear any, note down the words for them here.
Births, marriages and deaths

Reading 1

Read the text several times over the next day or so, doing the exercise following it each time. This will help you to remember and use the key words in the text.

Having a baby

The day I got the results of the pregnancy test - positive, 'pregnancy confirmed' - I was over the moon. I sat down and made out a shopping list straightaway.

List for Baby

cot (or crib) for baby to sleep in
pram and pushchair (and a carry-cot) to transport him or her
2 dozen nappies for him or her to wear (underneath)
safety-pins for his or her nappy
high-chair for him or her to sit in at meal-times
bib round his / her neck when he's / she's eating
dummy for him or her to suck
rattle for him or her to shake
toys and dolls (and a teddy-bear) for him or her to play with
potty for him or her to sit on to avoid nappies
masses of cotton wool as soon as possible

I couldn't believe it: me a mother-to-be! Actually pregnant! Expecting! 'An expectant mother' - that was my favourite description of me. My friends all joked about me being on some kind of fertility drug, conceiving as I did so soon after our wedding.

I had the customary morning sickness for a while, but after that, no trouble. I went along to the ante-natal clinic every fortnight and started doing all the proper breathing exercises like an excited child.

And I read! Book after book on the subject of childbirth: how big the foetus is in the womb at the various stages, the pros and cons of confinement at home, how 15% of pregnancies end in miscarriage, the dangers of this and that. Some of it wasn't very pleasant reading, I can tell you.

The feeling of relief was indescribable when, at the beginning of the fifth month, the doctor said he could hear the baby's heartbeat. He was a fully-trained gynaecologist, by the way - or was he an obstetrician? - I can't remember. A few days later I felt the first kick, and that was a pretty exciting moment, too.

It was in the twenty-eighth week that things began to go wrong. I had had several blood tests before, but after this one I was told my blood pressure was far too high — there was a risk of blood poisoning — and I would have to go into hospital. There followed a period of heartburn, cramp, vomiting and insomnia. I kept overhearing bits of conversations: 'may have to induce labour', 'if the baby is
premature, we'll... etc. My mind was filled with visions of incubators, induction, Caesarian operations and appalling complications. And the baby wasn't due for another six weeks!

When the time came, I was in labour for twenty-three hours. I remember shouting through a haze as they took me into the labour ward: 'No drip! No drugs! No stitches! Please!' I came out having had them all, and in the end it was a forceps delivery - or so I'm told.

After all that, I just looked forward to the simple joys of motherhood. When they told me I couldn't breast-feed and she would have to be bottle-fed, my post-natal depression really started. Some nights I would lie awake mumbling 'Never again'.

It's been pretty well the same story each time, but after the fifth I gave up saying 'Never again'. I really do think that the stork system of having babies has a lot of advantages.*

**Practice 1**

Find all these figures and places in the text. Then show how they are relevant, as in the examples.

15% That's how many pregnancies end in miscarriage.
masses That's how much cotton wool she bought.

1 28th
2 23 hours
3 at least 5
4 2 dozen
5 the ante-natal clinic
6 every 2 weeks
7 the labour ward

Add any further vocabulary that you feel is relevant to babies here.

**Reading 2**

There are two stories below, one about marriage, and one about divorce. Start in the middle column, which both stories have in common. Then read each story. When you have finished, cover the left-hand and right-hand columns in turn and try to remember the marital expressions.

**engagement, we** For the six months of our trial separation, I
we seemed blissfully happy, so I get married.
decided to go ahead and get a divorce.

There were lots of decisions to make: whether to
have a civil marriage in a registry office or marry in church and have a white wedding. We finally decided on the latter. After that, it was mainly a question (I thought) of where to have the reception and where to go on our honeymoon.

he had a stag party organized by his best man while I had a hen party with some girlfriends.

church, The night before,

the bride, When we arrived at the we made a strange trio, I must say: me as

the (bride-) groom Richard as

my bridesmaid. and my little sister as

The vicar (priest) had a lot to say and took ages.

the service 'Gwendoline Mary, do you take this man, Richard Percy, in holy matrimony, to...?'

gave me away, My father

T'm a married woman.' and cried. It seemed very strange for a few days to say,

But I never regretted it Well,...

Add here any other words about marriage that you meet.

sue on the grounds of incompatibility or his cruelty or his adultery. I how much alimony he should pay and how much maintenance for the children.

I spent hours recalling all our anniversaries and going through correspondence with my solicitor.

divorce court,

the plaintiff,

the respondent,

the co-respondent. The judge (magistrate)

case

'I hereby dissolve' - or did he say 'annul'? - this marriage ... and award a decree nisi to... was in court with me,

'I'm not a divorcee, but I will be in six weeks' time when I get a decree absolute.'
Reading 3

Look through these thoughts on death over the next few days, noting some of the many words and expressions that may be required on this delicate subject.

1 Most of our relatives are **dead**. It's a big subject. We all **die**. The priest says we have **gone to meet our Maker** — **gone to a better place**. Close relatives say we have **passed away**. Schoolboys say someone has **kicked the bucket**. Legally speaking, we are referred to as **deceased**. There are a hundred and one ways to die. Most people would like to die from **natural causes** - **of old age**. Many don't, as you can see below.

2 **Causes of Death** among US males aged 25 to 44

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Accidents</td>
<td>19,744</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Heart Diseases</td>
<td>10,628</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Cancer</td>
<td>7,690</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Homicide</td>
<td>7,369</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Suicide</td>
<td>6,868</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

1 **Accidental death** covers many things, of course. A fair proportion of those above will have been **knocked down** in a road accident, many will have **died at the wheel of their car**. A few will have died in **plane crashes**, some will have **drowned** at sea. Some will have been **burnt to death** in a fire, a number **gassed**, rather more **electrocuted**. A lot no doubt **suffocated** or were **asphyxiated** in an airless room or fire, one or two will have **choke to death** on afish-bone.

4 There are a hundred and one ways of being **killed**. If you are an important celebrity, you can be **assassinated**. Remember the **assassination** of JFK and the subsequent murder of his suspected **assassin**? You can be **stabbed to death** with a sword or knife. You can be **shot** with a gun like Bonnie and Clyde. You can be **poisoned** with something you didn't order in your dinner. You can be **strangled** with a piece of string or scarf. The Boston **Strangler** might ring a bell?

3 **War brings with it a language of its own**: **missing, presumed dead; fatally wounded; he laid down his life for** his country; she **sacrificed herself** for the sake of her comrades. In wartime, and even sometimes in peacetime, one hears of **massacres and slaughter**, with hundreds of **victims** and often no **survivors**.

4 There are other ways of being killed, apart from being **murdered** or being **killed in action**. **Capital punishment** is one of them. Many countries still retain the **death penalty for serious offenders**. If you are **sentenced to death** and are not **pardoned or reprieved** at a later date, then you will be **executed**; perhaps **hanged** - with a rope, or **electrocuted** - in the electric chair, or **guillotined** - remember the French Revolution, or **shot** - by a **firing squad**, or **garotted or beheaded** or ... But enough is enough, I hear you cry. Agreed. If I could just remind you, though, that a couple of thousand years ago you might have been **crucified - on a cross**, or **stoned to death**, like some Christian **martyrs**.

5 There are a hundred and one ways of **committing suicide**. Many of the horrors above you can do to yourself, but the most popular method is to take an **overdose** of drugs like Marilyn Monroe and too many others.

Is **euthanasia** murder? Is **voluntary euthanasia** the same as suicide? Are they all crimes or do you believe that **mercy-killing** can bring welcome **release**?
The statistics deal only with men aged twenty-five to forty-four. Twenty-five is very young, but death can come earlier. The infant mortality rate in some countries is as high as one in three. Despite the advances in medical science, many babies are stillborn, and the number of inexplicable cot deaths continues to give cause for alarm.

For many people, all these figures are somewhat overshadowed by the fact that millions are dying of hunger, starving to death. Some are dying of thirst, many more of malnutrition. Is there a bloodbath waiting round the corner, do you think? A holocaust waiting for the spark?

A lot of things have to be done after death. An inquest may have to be held to determine how we died. This might involve a post-mortem or autopsy. Then, most of the arrangements are made by a firm of funeral directors - or undertakers. Much depends on whether we have chosen to be buried or cremated. For burial, we will be concerned with a coffin, in which to place the body, a hearse, in which to transport it, a grave, in which the coffin will finally be placed, and a cemetery (or graveyard), in which the grave will be dug. For cremation, more simply, an urn to hold our ashes, and a crematorium to hold the service. In either case, one might expect wreaths to be brought to the funeral service and an epitaph to be engraved on our headstone. Then it will be time for the will to be read; death duties may have to be paid; our heir will inherit our estate; our widow or widower will no doubt be in mourning for a long time to come.

We are unlikely to have a tomb. Napoleon has a tomb in Paris, but that honour is reserved for people like him. Nor will our corpses be laid to rest in a mausoleum. It is extremely unlikely that someone will compose a requiem in our honour or build a statue to our memory, and almost certain that we shall not lie in state for even a day. An obituary in The Times would be asking a lot. No, I think the most we can hope for is that someone might recognize our talents posthumously and dedicate something to us then. RIP, as we say, or rest in peace.

**Practice 2**

Below you will find definitions of some of the important words in the text. Try to give the word for each of them. If you cannot remember it, read the text again to find it.

1. a person who murders someone important
2. a large decorative grave with a space inside
3. be unable to breathe air; dying or killing in this way
4. to kill by pressing on the throat with the hands
5. someone put to death for their beliefs
6. poor condition of health resulting from lack of (good) food
7. to burn the body of a dead person at a funeral ceremony
8. an arrangement of flowers such as those given at a funeral
9. a statement of how you want your things to be shared after your death
10. a piece of music written for a dead person

Write or discuss the answers to these questions.

1. What poems, plays and films have you read and seen which deal with the subject of death? What was your reaction to them?
2. How would you summarise modern thinking about the way babies should be born? Do you agree with these theories?
3. What needs to be done to make a wedding ceremony successful?

Write or act out a conversation in which you ask someone how her recent pregnancy went and how the baby is doing.
Debate or write an article on the following subject: *If the institution of marriage breaks down, so will our society*. Take five minutes to think of your ideas, arrange your arguments, consider your strategy. Then argue!

Write, in dialogue form, a conversation between a parent and his or her child of five who has just asked what happens to us when we die.

Write an article for your local paper describing the funeral of a national hero or heroine in your country.

Write a part of your letter to a friend describing how everything went wrong at another friend’s recent wedding.

Add here any words to do with death that you meet.
Work

Game

First, a game to test you on the words for some jobs and professions. Cover the column on the right. Who would you contact or call on in the situations below? Then look at the column on the right. Try to find the appropriate person for each situation. Be careful! They are not in the right order.

1. a filling has come out of one of your back teeth
2. you think your eyes need testing
3. you find you have an ingrowing toe-nail
4. your back hurts and your doctor can't help
   *(Find four people.)*
5. your fringe is getting a bit too long
6. you want a portrait photograph of yourself
7. you have decided to sue somebody
   *(who might refer you to another lawyer)*
8. you fancy a holiday in the sun
9. you want advice on investment or insurance
10. your grand piano isn't sounding quite right
11. you want to find a 400-year-old grandfather clock
12. you are planning a church wedding
13. your car won't start
14. you want to place a bet on the 3.45 race at Ascot
15. someone in the family has just died
16. you want to learn to drive
17. you want to buy a pedigree alsatian
18. you have decided to sell your house
19. you want plans drawn up for a new house
20. you want to go ahead and have the new house built
21. you are moving house and have a furniture problem
22. you have lots of old iron you want to get rid of
23. you want new windows put into the house
24. your new fridge is leaking
25. you like the idea of new wallpaper throughout the house
26. water is gushing from your kitchen taps even when turned off
27. all the lights in your house have fused
28. you think your neighbours just might be neglecting their little child
29. your house is on fire
30. you think you are going crazy

   a chiropodist
   a broker
   a dentist (dental surgeon)
   a vicar (priest)
   a hairdresser (hair stylist)
   a bookmaker
   an architect
   an osteopath
   a driving instructor
   a solicitor
   a barrister
   a (dog) breeder
   a (garage) mechanic
   a photographer
   a piano tuner
   a chiropractor
   an optician
   a masseur (masseuse)
   a building contractor (builder)
   an antique dealer
   a travel agent
   a scrap metal dealer (merchant)
   a physiotherapist
   an undertaker (funeral director)
   an electrician
   an estate agent
   a maintenance engineer
   a glazier (and a carpenter)
   the fire brigade (firemen)
   a psychiatrist
   a social worker
   a removal firm
   a plumber
   an interior decorator
Practice 1

[1] The jobs below are grouped according to the results of a survey on average weekly earnings in Britain. Group A earn the most, Group J the least.

1. Look through the groups to find the following:
   - employers, employees
   - white-collar (office) workers, blue-collar (factory and manual) workers,
   - manufacturing industries (factories), service industries (other), professions,
   - skilled workers, semi-skilled workers.

2. Note any jobs that you think are in the wrong group. Which group would you put them in?

3. Decide how fair you think earnings are in Britain.

**Group A**
- medical practitioners (doctors, etc.)
- pilots
- specialists in finance,
- insurance / tax inspectors
- university lecturers

**Group B**
- police inspectors
- fire-service officers
- prison officers
- sales managers
- marketing executives
- company secretaries
- personnel / industrial relations officers

**Group C**
- ship’s officers
- advertising executives
- public relations officers
- journalists (reporters)
- electrical / electronic engineers
- local government administrators

**Group D**
- mechanical engineers
- civil engineers
- computer programmers
- systems analysts
- accountants
- teachers in further education
- metallurgists
- public health inspectors
- production engineers
- policemen

**Group E**
- industrial designers
- surveyors
- draughtsmen
- ambulancemen
- technical sales representatives
- welfare workers
- primary / secondary school teachers

**Group F**
- toolmakers and fitters
- furnace men
- welders (skilled)
- security officers,
- guards and detectives
- laboratory technicians
- sales supervisors
- bus / coach drivers
- sheet metal workers

**Group G**
- lathe operators
- train drivers
- and signalmen
- motor mechanics (skilled)
- bricklayers
- postmen
- mail sorters
- catering supervisors
- joiners
- shipping and travel clerks
- telephonists

**Group H**
- packers, bottlers, canners, fillers
- chefs and cooks
- plasterers
- hotel / pub / club managers
- midwives and registered nurses
- painters
- and decorators
- refuse collectors (dustmen)
- bakers and confectioners
- hospital porters
- storekeepers

**Group I**
- shop assistants
- salesmen
- shelf-fillers
- caretakers
- bus conductors
- bleachers and dyers
- gardeners
- butchers
- barmen

**Group J**
- road sweepers
- general farm workers
- kitchen hands
- nursing auxiliaries
- waitresses
Work

Work is obviously more than just having a job. Here is some union business for you to consider. You will probably meet quite a lot of this language again some time in your career.

1. If you are working alone, go straight to task 2. If you are working in a group, roleplay a part of the meeting with the following agenda. (Choose the points that look most interesting.) Before you start, allocate roles. You'll need at least two employers, possibly a full board, then three or four representatives of the workforce, each preferably with some special responsibility. Have a few minutes in your two camps now before you begin the meeting, to discuss strategy.

2. Write the Directors' reply to some written requests from the union. You will make some concessions, of course, but will want to reject some of the proposals.

Agenda for Works Council Meeting with Employers 19.03.89 14.30

1. Minutes of Meeting of 18.03.89
2. Plans for more job stability: supplementary pensions
   sickness benefit schemes

Disputes Procedure
Renegotiation of "Hiring and Firing" Procedures
   (motion for the reinstatement of Shop Steward Jack Hartley, dismissed 18.03.89)

Redundancy Agreement

3. Recruitment, Promotion and Transfer of Personnel
   Training Requirements

4. Classification of Jobs, Responsibility Allowances

5. Negotiations for Annual Wage Increase
   Provision to relate all Pay to Government's Retail Price Index.

Please add below any other points that you would like to be raised.

6. Time and a half and time off in lieu of Bank Holiday working
7. Special rates for overtime and unsocial hours
8. Double time after lunchtime Friday
9. Review of Working Conditions + canteen, rest room facilities
10. End of time and motion studies
11. Increase in uniform allowance
12. Flexi-time proposals
13. Workers' representation on the Board
14. Reduction in Hours of Work, Increase in Holiday Entitlement
15. Minimum Compensation for Industrial Injury
16. Incentive Bonus Schemes
17. Productivity Deals!!!
18. Danger Money!
19. Proposals for Profit-Sharing Systems
20. Plans for Setting up of Workers' Co-operative - w.e.f. next Monday!

Study

An important aspect of work is our position, our status. Here are some of the ranks in the three British armed services.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Navy</th>
<th>Army</th>
<th>Air Force</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>admiral of the fleet</td>
<td>commanding officer (C.O.)</td>
<td>air marshal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lieutenant</td>
<td>colonel</td>
<td>wing commander</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>able seaman</td>
<td>warrant officer</td>
<td>pilot officer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>petty officer</td>
<td>brigadier</td>
<td>flight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cadet</td>
<td>sergeant</td>
<td>lieutenant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

142
commander  
captain  
commodore  
First Sea Lord  
leading seaman

lance corporal  
private  
commander-in-chief  
major  
captain  
general

marshal of the air force  
flight sergeant  
air commodore  
group captain

**Practice 2**

Now look at various ranks and positions you can have in the following places. There are eight gaps. Read items 1-8 and write the appropriate number in each.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>Sergeant</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>Countess</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Shop steward</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Earl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Staff nurse</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Housemaster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Vicar</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Secretary of State</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Police**

Commissioner  
(Chief) Superintendent  
(Chief) Inspector  
Constable

**Politics**

Prime Minister  
Junior Minister  
Back-bencher  
Parliamentary Private Secretary  
Mayor  
Councillor

**Union**

Union Leader  
Member of the Executive  
Branch Secretary  
Conference Delegate

**Company**

Chairman  
Director  
Shareholder

**School**

Headmaster/ -mistress  
Principal  
Director of Studies  
Deputy Head  
Head of Department  
.../-mistress  
Senior Teacher  
Supervisor of Studies

**Aristocracy**

King  
Prince  
Duke  
Marquis  
.../ Count  
Viscount

**Catholic church**

Pope  
Cardinal  
Bishop  
Deacon  
Priest

**Protestant church**

Archbishop  
Dean  
Canon  
Parson  
Curate

**Aristocracy**

Queen  
Princess  
Duchess  
Marchioness  
Viscountess

---

**Reading**

Not everybody has a regular, steady job with a fixed income. Some are self-employed and work for themselves, some work part-time, some work irregular shifts, some are unemployed. Some have a job, but it isn't what it should be. Some are apprentices, earning very little while they are being trained.
Read the words of the song below, noting how many people there are who are not Number One. The key-words have been printed on the right so that you can test yourself later.

I know you've always got to have a kind of... who will throw all the balls back into play. And you couldn't really do without a ... longing for the manager's holiday. And the company will always need a ... praying for the chairperson's death. It's clear that somebody has got to be the ... and someone has to make do with ....

Someone must accept that he's the ... waiting impatiently to play in the team. Someone's got to act as the ... typing out ream after ream. Someone's got to be the magician's ... holding the maestro's gloves. And someone's got to work as the ... wishing she was one step above.

I suppose there'll always be a place for the ... turning the pianist's pages. And you're always going to find a ... who'll clean out the animals' cages. And can the cast do without the poor ... fidgeting in the wings? Can the golfer get around without his faithful. carrying his clubs and things?

I know that someone's got to be the ... getting on everybody's nerves. And there'll always be a need for a ... aware that she was ... And it's no disgrace to be a plumber's ... carrying the boss's tools, **Or the temporary relief, a...,** A stranger in a hundred schools.

I guess there'll always be a job for the ... Peeping through the restaurant door. You can't have a fight without a heavy-weight, Landing in a heap on the floor. And you'll often hear the stories of the ... Who never quite made it to sea. I know all that, but I can't help wondering why it's always got to be me.

---

**Practice 3**

[1] Describe the **structure of a company** that you know or of a typical company in your town. Mention the number of **employees**, the **working conditions**, the chances for **promotion, the directors, etc.**

[2] Describe how you think work will have changed in 15, 30 and 45 years' time. What new jobs will there be? What jobs will have disappeared? What will most people's working conditions be like?
[3] Write or act out an interview between a candidate and his or her prospective employers from the point where the interviewee is invited to ask questions.

[4] Write an enthusiastic letter to a friend or your parents after the first week in your first job.

[5] Write the first two paragraphs of a magazine article that has the headline: Is any job better than no job at all?

- Add here any other words about employment you may meet.
Earning and spending money

Reading

Look, everyone, I think we ought to try and economise a bit this month - go carefully on our spending money, cut out a few luxuries, just generally cut down a bit. OK?

Below is an English family’s budget in pounds sterling for next month. Look at it to see where their money is coming from and how much is going out. Note down how you think they could save money and any differences between this budget and a family budget in your country.

Income

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Basic salary (gross 380, after tax)</td>
<td>335.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overtime payment</td>
<td>56.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Productivity bonus</td>
<td>10.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Royalties on 'Son of Jaws'</td>
<td>35.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Son’s wages (4 x 45 net)</td>
<td>180.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His tips and commission</td>
<td>25.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic Earnings</td>
<td>642.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

plus extras:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jim’s college grant (240 - 3, tax-free)</td>
<td>80.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freda’s scholarship (120-3)</td>
<td>40.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child Benefit (7.50 x 2 x 4)</td>
<td>60.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dad’s pension</td>
<td>136.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ted’s dole money - unemployment benefit</td>
<td>146.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dad’s dividend on his BP shares</td>
<td>13.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interest on Mum’s savings (bank deposit account)</td>
<td>3.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tax Rebate (Tax year 1980 – 81)</td>
<td>4.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winnings on the Derby</td>
<td>2.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total extras:</td>
<td>485.50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Total Income (all sources): 1127.50

Outgoings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>National Insurance Contributions:</td>
<td>46.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mortgage payment:</td>
<td>175.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rates (Direct Debit):</td>
<td>39.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gas and Electricity - Quarterly Bills:</td>
<td>164.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alimony - maintenance money to ex-wife:</td>
<td>173.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HP instalment on car:</td>
<td>88.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Road Tax:</td>
<td>80.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speeding fine:</td>
<td>35.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Life Insurance premium:</td>
<td>48.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deposit on new washing-machine:</td>
<td>45.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accountant’s fees (3 months overdue):</td>
<td>25.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repayment on Credit Company loan (Standing Order):</td>
<td>60.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interest on overdraft on current account:</td>
<td>45.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other bank charges:</td>
<td>10.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subscription to magazines:</td>
<td>10.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donation to ‘Help the Aged’:</td>
<td>5.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contribution to Labour Party funds:</td>
<td>7.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jenny and Jim’s pocket money:</td>
<td>60.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stake money for football pools and horse-racing:</td>
<td>18.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Church Collection:</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Total Expenditure: 1136.00

Balance: -£8.50
Practice

[1] Act out or write a conversation between various members of this family, discussing how perhaps they could cut down and save a little money.

[2] Below are a number of ways of saving or making money. Note down which you think are sensible and which you would not recommend. If you are working in a group, discuss your notes. If you are working on your own, write a brief summary of them.

1 buying in bulk to beat inflation
2 looking out for genuine reductions and real bargains in the sales
3 buying supermarket brands rather than brand-name products
4 buying economy-size packets and tins of things
5 collecting packet tops that offer discounts on the next purchase, have '5p off' labels on them or contain forms for special offers
6 looking out for special HP (hire-purchase) deals at good rates of interest
7 delaying payment of bills until the final demand
8 taking your holidays out of season at cheap rates
9 buying second-hand clothes in jumble sales or charity shops
10 buying products that offer trading stamps or gift vouchers or competitions with once-in-a-lifetime prizes
11 using the telephone at off-peak, cheap-rate times
12 shopping only at places where money can be refunded rather than goods exchanged
13 changing your foreign currency when the rates of exchange are favourable
14 checking your bank statement and cheque counterfoils to make sure there are no errors
15 looking after receipts and guarantees

[3] Which expression from the list of comments below would you use about yourself at the moment? Notice how many expressions we have for rich and poor, reflecting our obsession with money, and how we often refer to pence as p in everyday conversation.

He's a multi-millionaire.
She inherited millions (an oil-heiress).
They won a fortune.
She's got more money than sense.
They're made of money.
He's a very wealthy businessman.
She's extremely well-off.
You're looking very prosperous.
They say we're living in an affluent society.
He's comfortably off.
Money doesn't buy happiness, but it helps.
I'm a bit hard up at the moment, actually.
I'm down to my last ten p.
He's broke.
They're on the breadline.
I haven't got a penny to my name.
I'm afraid we're bankrupt, gentlemen.
Now I know what it's like to be poverty-stricken.
I'm running into debt.
I owe money everywhere.
I'm heavily in debt.
I'm a few thousand in the red.
I'm up to my ears in debt.
I wonder if it's true that crime doesn't pay!
Earning and spending money

Note down the various ways in which shops and firms in your country encourage you to buy their products.

Act out or write a conversation between a friendly bank manager and a newly-married couple. They are asking for advice on financial matters: how to manage their salaries, savings, monthly outgoings, etc.

Act out or write an interview between an employer and an employee who is trying to explain how difficult it is to 'make ends meet' on his or her salary and is therefore asking for a rise.

Write a reply to your bank manager's letter enquiring about your £200 overdraft. Explain why you have one and what you're going to do about it.

Write the opening of your speech to a meeting of your town's Young Socialists on the inequality in present-day society and the unfair distribution of wealth.

Write the first paragraph or two of a brochure announcing that you have set up as a financial adviser. Outline the services you will be offering, the benefits that clients will receive etc.

If you meet any other words to describe your finances, add them here.
Health and illness

Reading 1

Study the 'case history' below. Then write ten headlines for the President's ten-day illness, from President taken ill to The nation holds its breath.

'You're in perfect health ... as fit as a fiddle ... there's nothing wrong with you.'
'I feel a bit off-colour ... rather under the weather ... I do feel funny ... I really don't feel well... I think I'm sickening for something ... I feel feverish ... like death warmed up.'

'He's been taken ill... he's in a coma ... fighting for his life ... still critically ill... in a very critical condition ... no change ... still seriously ill... still hasn't regained consciousness ... is responding to treatment... off the danger list... showing signs of coming round ... making progress ... his condition is satisfactory... he's come out of the coma ... he's as well as can be expected ... comfortable ... no change ... he's turned the corner ... he's on the mend.'

'We all wish you a speedy recovery ... get well soon ... we're glad you're over it.'

'The worst is over ... he's almost completely recovered ... he's practically cured ... he's convalescing ... coming along nicely ... he'll be on his feet again soon ... he'll be out and about again in a few days.'

'He's had a relapse ... he's no better ... he's getting worse ... his condition is deteriorating ... he's getting weaker ... he's slipping away ... fading fast... his life is hanging by a thread ... it's just a matter of time ... he could go at any second!'

'He's made a miraculous recovery ... he's as good as new ... as right as rain ... he'll live till he's a hundred.'

After all that, do you feel well enough to read on? Note the ways that illnesses can be spoken of and reported in the text below.

Examination Fever

For most of the year, most of us had been allergic to work; apparently there had been a history of such allergies in the school.

Throughout the spring there had been quite a few cases of 'Exams are stupid', which proved highly contagious among friends.

Then in late May, one or two of us suffered a mild attack of 'Gosh, is it really next month?' and we seemed to give that to the others rather rapidly. You could tell how it was spreading from improved attendance at lessons.

An even more serious outbreak was that of the very infectious 'I don't know a thing' two weeks before. At about the same time everyone seemed to catch 'You're no good!' from the teachers. Then there was a bout of 'I don't really care' followed by a few chronic cases of 'My parents will kill me'. This again proved very catching; half the class was down with it in the week leading up to the exam itself, and it had reached epidemic proportions by the Friday before.

By this time, those who had been suffering from 'I'll be easy for me' had made a total recovery.

That Friday there was a 'What if I'm suffering from amnesia?' scare, and this had developed by Monday into a touch of 'I can't even remember my own name'.

There were also, of course, the normal isolated cases of 'My pen doesn't work' and several pupils had a sudden fit of 'Where's the toilet?'

Afterwards there were a couple of complaints of 'I know I've failed', but generally the worst seemed to be over. Such diseases are rarely terminal. And after all, we had a convalescence and recuperation period of six and a half weeks to follow.
Health and illness

Practice 1

Without looking back at the previous two texts, try to supply the missing word that completes these expressions:

1 under the ...
2 it's just a ... of time
3 ... the mend
4 suffer... hayfever
5 to go ... with 'flu
6 turn the ...
7 as ... as a fiddle
8 a bit...- colour
9 fighting ... his life
10 allergic... dust
11 as right as ...
12 just a ... attack of nerves

Here, on this rather unpleasant page, are some of the best-known and least-wanted diseases and conditions, arranged according to where they strike or what causes them. However, in each group there is one that should not be there. Can you identify it?

The heart and blood vessels
- poor circulation
- high blood pressure
- a stroke
- heart attack
- jaundice
- cardiac arrest
- heart failure

The liver
- gallstones
- cirrhosis of the liver
- hepatitis
- cancer of the liver
- coronary thrombosis

The stomach and intestines
- appendicitis
- stomach ulcer
- polio
- a hernia
- constipation

Infectious fevers
- measles
- chickenpox
- German measles (rubella)
- smallpox
- pleurisy
- glandular fever
- yellow fever
- scarlet fever
- whooping cough
- influenza
- leprosy
- malaria

The lungs and respiratory system
- diphtheria
- catarrh
- sinusitis
- tonsilitis
- laryngitis
- asthma
- angina
- cholera
- bronchitis
- tuberculosis (TB)
- lung cancer

The blood
- anaemia
- pneumonia
- leukaemia
- a haemorrhage
- a blood clot

Food poisoning
- typhoid
- dysentery
- diarrhoea and vomiting
- salmonella
- mumps

The joints
- rheumatism
- enteritis
- arthritis
- fibrositis

The nervous system
- migraine
- epilepsy (epileptic fits)
- Parkinson's disease
- multiple sclerosis
- muscular dystrophy

Mental disorders
- schizophrenia
- manic depression
- neurosis
- paranoia

150
This is a section on symptoms, possible diagnosis and remedies. These six exchanges between doctor and patient have been mixed up. Decide which response should follow which question.

1 I've been suffering from insomnia lately. Do you think I might be heading for a nervous breakdown?

   a Possible. Try this lotion for a few days to stop the itching, then start putting on this powder at night.

2 I seem to have some sort of stye or infection in my right eye. Do you think I might have conjunctivitis?

   b Unlikely, but I'll let you have some cough mixture to relieve the symptoms. You can get yourself some lozenges, if you like.

3 I can't stop scratching this place on my foot. Do you think it's athlete's foot?

   c I would doubt it. Here, rub this cream in for the next few nights to help reduce the swelling.

4 I've got a rather sore throat, and I keep feeling a bit flushed. Do you think it could be 'flu?

   d No, of course not. But I'll prescribe some barbiturates - sleeping pills - to help you get a good night's rest. OK?

5 I've got a big bump on the back of my head. Do you think it might be more than a bruise?

   e I wouldn't have thought so. But I'll give you a prescription for some drops to try and clear it up.

6 I keep getting shooting pains down my shin and ankle. Is it possible that I've broken or sprained something?

   f Well, the X-ray didn't show anything. If it's so painful, you'd better have some crutches to walk with and some painkillers to ease the pain.

Rearrange these six paragraphs in the same way.

1 I've got a dull ache in my arm and occasionally I get a spasm. Could it be a minor fracture, a chipped bone or something?

   a Mm, sounds a bit like it. I'll make you out a prescription for some penicillin, and some menthol inhalations might speed up the recovery.

2 I've got these tiny little bumps all over the back of my neck. Do you think it might be gland trouble?

   b It's just possible. I'll strap it up anyway and put it in a sling. That should reduce your discomfort quite a lot.

3 I've come out in a rash on my chest. Do you think it could be a skin disease like impetigo or dermatitis?

   c Oh, I shouldn't think so, but I think perhaps you ought to start taking these tranquillisers, to at least get your blood pressure down.

4 I keep getting short of breath. Is there any way I could be suffering from asthma?

   d Oh no, no, no. You'd know if it was. I'll give you some ointment to rub in to get rid of the inflammation.

5 I think I've got an ulcer in my mouth. Do you think it could be a sign that I'm run down?

   e Probably not. I'll put you on a course of tablets to prevent them from spreading. They should go soon.

6 I feel so feverish, and I'm sure I've got a temperature. I'm so afraid that there's something wrong with my heart.

   f It might well be. I'll put you on antibiotics for a while anyway, to lessen the risk of serious infection.
Health and illness

Reading 2

Observations of a Hospital Porter

Ambulance siren,
Brakes squealing,
Screeching. **Bleeding.**
**Stretchers** wheeling.
**Anaesthetic.**
**Operations.**
**Amputation.**
**Blood transfusion.**
Every hour
A siren blares
Another night
At St Mary's.

Practice 2

A Nurse's Lament

Complete the text below by filling each gap with one of the following verbs:

dressing setting giving taking saving fitting sterilising taking out transplanting taking off performing.

Well, don't you think it's unfair? There they are upstairs,... **bones,**,... **skin grafts,**... **pacemakers,**... **organs,**... **lives** and exciting things like that. And here I am spending the whole of my day,... **people's pulse,**,... **injections,**,... **bandages,**... **stitches,**... **wounds and bottles.** And to think they earn four times as much money for all the fun they have!

Reading 3

Prevention is better than cure.

**HIS LIFE IS IN YOUR HANDS**

Beautiful, isn't he? The sort of child any parents would be proud of.
Hard to imagine that until a few months ago this little boy was **in mortal danger and nearly lost his life.**
Without proper **vaccination** he was at the mercy of every **germ, virus, bacterial disease** around.
Don't take the risk!
Make sure your child is fully **inoculated.** Today!

**GIVE YOUR CHILD A FAIR CHANCE - TO LIVE!**
Practice 3

III Write or act out conversations in a doctor’s surgery - rather longer than the ones you read earlier - in which a doctor, a patient and the patient’s mother, wife or husband discuss how the patient should recover from the operation he or she is about to have.


[3] Debate or write about the topic: Nobody wants to live till they’re a hundred and ten. Organise your thoughts carefully before you begin.

[4] Describe the remedies or treatments you have heard of for the complaints and accidents listed below.

1 a bad burn  
2 nosebleed  
3 frostbite  
4 hiccups  
5 a hangover  
6 a fish-hook in the finger  
7 a cold  
8 a person who’s fainted  
9 a person who’s nearly drowned

III Write a letter to a friend from your hospital bed, describing your way of life for the past few weeks, before and since your operation.

[6] Write, in dialogue form, a conversation between a GP (General Practitioner or family doctor), a parent and a very spotty child.

• Add any more words you need to describe any further illnesses you may catch or hear of.
Sport and games

Jigsaw reading

These extracts from sporting commentaries were in pairs, but they have been mixed up. Decide which extract goes with which. Then guess which sport is being referred to in each extract. The answers are given at the end of this unit to help you.

1 ... and now, just when it looked as if Wallburger was going to win the bout on points,...
2 ... at this stage, with the recent loss of Scherzo's bishop, knight and both rooks, we can only be a couple of moves away from mate ...
3 ... and in pole position on the grid, on his favourite circuit, with its short straights and tight bends, is Marconi Libido — three times winner here and currently leading the championship table ...
4 ... then her legs shooting out in front of her, landing feet apart in the pit - a beautiful leap ...
5 ... Frankfurter has produced a left hook from nowhere, midway through the thirteenth round, to put him on the canvas. And it doesn't look as if he's going to beat the count...
6 ... so it looks as if it's going to be the fast finishers who can sprint to the line who are in with the best chance. Down the back straight,...
7 ... a forehand drive return of service - fine shot - Lumbago can't get it. It's in!
8 ... you can see it again now in slow motion; her foot hits the board, perfect take-off - the cycling movement she performs in mid-air ...
9 ... his king is now virtually defenceless. And in fact it's all over. Scherzo has resigned, his...
10 ... and also crossing into the inside lane from lane number two ...
11 ... so, a free kick just outside the United penalty area! ffipov dummies over the ball. Hansov takes it - across the goal. Pizov goes up for it but he's fouled by Robson. It's a penalty in injury time.
12 ... That's it! Game, set and match to Andante ...
13 ... And they're off. Down goes the flag and they're away on the first of eighty laps.
14 ... so, the first lap in 53.4 seconds. There's the bell and at the moment, the Kenyan is out at the front, leading by a couple of metres, and it's a slow time ...
15 ... and this is her third attempt with the bar at 1 metre 81...
16 ... a red flag, his third no-throw in a row, so he's out of the competition ...
17 ... Two-one, and now a dramatic chance for an equalizer. Remember, if the match ends in a draw at full-time, it will be decided on penalties ...
18 ... and the Russian team are disqualified for handing on the baton too late ...
19 ... steps into the circle, composes himself, spins rounds - oh dear!...
20 ... slow approach, up and she's over, and at a new record height...

Game 1

Look at the groups of four words below. Try to decide in which sport all four words would be used. Then try to add a word of your own to each group. In one or two cases, more than one sport may be associated with the four items. These answers are also given at the end of the unit.

1 table 5 course 9 mat 13 ring
   net    hole    horse    ropes
   bat    flag    bars     corner
   backhand clubs beam bell
Below are three other short games for you. Don't worry if you don't win; they are only games to help you remember the words.

1 Here are some of the men's world records that existed in 1987 in certain athletics events (outdoor as opposed to indoor). Cover the column on the right and see if you can guess which event goes with which record.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Record</th>
<th>Label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>high jump</td>
<td>2.42m.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pole vault, 100m. hurdles</td>
<td>9.93secs.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long jump, 4 by 100m. relay</td>
<td>8.90m.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>triple jump, 400 metres</td>
<td>17.97m.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shot, 3000m. steeplechase</td>
<td>22.64m.</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discus, marathon</td>
<td>74.08m.</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hammer, decathlon</td>
<td>84.74m.</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>javelin</td>
<td>104.80m.</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Now look at the column on the right and select the appropriate instrument used by each of the officials on the left. The name of the official's sport is given to help you.

football
the referee's
the linesman's
the trainer's

boxing
the judge's
the second's

athletics
the starter's
the timekeeper's

tennis
the umpire's

3 And now, who wears what? Cover the column on the right. Which sportsmen/women would you expect to find wearing these clothes and accessories?

1 helmet, thigh and shoulder pads, boots
2 cap, goggles, trunks
3 shorts, vest, spikes
4 shorts, gloves, gumshield
5 mask, breastplate, gym shoes

speedway rider or American footballer
swimmer
sprinter
boxer
fencer
Sport and games

Reading

For many people, sport is a question of winning or losing. Note the numerous expressions concerning sporting success and failure in the text that follows.

The Village Sports

The sports were held as usual on the recreation field, next to the glove factory. Officials outnumbered spectators, but there were more competitors than ever before.

Maggie was the star, as always. Apart from winning the women's sprints and tying for first place in the long jump, she was champion again in the (approximately) 50 metres freestyle, retaining her title for the fifth time. She led from start to finish in the running - the others didn't stand a chance - and she was in a class of her own in the swimming; it was a walk-over, completely one-sided. She was across that pond and back before some had reached the other side.

Dad did well too. There was a field of fifteen for the 400 metres - to the bicycle shed and back - and Dad was an outsider before the race because he's unfit; but he excelled himself and came second. Was he proud of his runner's-up medal? You should have seen him!

Our family were reigning champions in the Five-a-side football competition and hot favourites to win the cup again. We did, but only just. The final - against our old rivals, the Lavenders - finished in a draw, despite two own-goals by Uncle Mac, and we kept the trophy on goal difference from earlier rounds.

After that, things began to go wrong and we suffered a number of defeats. Uncle Mac and little Donald were in a photo finish for last place in the father-and-son race - or would have been if someone had had a camera. They were just about overtaken on the line by old Mr Grey with his fifty-year-old son on his back; it was probably a dead-heat actually.

Then we were outclassed in the boxing. Uncle Bill was a beaten finalist at middleweight, but Uncle Mac was knocked out in the second round at heavyweight and at lightweight I was stopped in the first round. (I swear that Bobby Lavender is over 50 kilos.)

Because of my disappointing performance in that event, I was relegated to the substitutes' bench for the tug-of-war and Aunt Flossie was promoted to our first team. I felt so ashamed. Our opponents in the first heat were the butcher's family from Number 15 and they slaughtered us.

Then things went from bad to worse. Granny was well beaten in the over 70s' 200-metres handicap. She was towards the back of the field for most of the race and failed to finish the course in the end. Then Auntie Jane had all kinds of problems in the sack-race and was just an also-ran. She did get a consolation prize for finishing - two minutes after the others — but we had been hoping for a victory in that event. And then, worst of all, Grandad was disqualified in the egg-and-spoon race for having stuck the egg to the spoon. What's more, he's been banned from entering the competition for five years.

I've noticed over the past few years how the village sports have been getting more and more serious. It's a pity, really. I blame television ... for everything.

156
Practice 1

As further practice of some of the vocabulary in that text, answer the questions below.

1 Who is the reigning Wimbledon women's singles champion?
2 How many spectators does your country's largest football stadium hold?
3 Why might you bet money on an outsider?
4 Who were the beaten finalists in the last football World Cup?
5 Whose athletes are usually hot favourites to win most gold medals in an Olympic Games?
6 Who was the runner-up in last season's Formula One Drivers' Championship?
7 Are there heats for a marathon?
8 When might you be disqualified in a 100 metres sprint?
9 Who gets the gold medal when there's a dead heat?
10 Why might someone be banned from taking part in a sport for a period of time?

Riddle

Answer this question. If you need help, the answer is printed at the end of the unit.

Question: In sport, what one thing can you hold, set, break, smash or equal?

Game 2

And finally here's a little game - to add a few more words to your vocabulary and test your knowledge of sport. In each of the items below, something is wrong. See if you can spot each mistake.

1 So Miss Cupido finally wins six - love, seven-six (after the tie-break) seven - five.
2 Stravinski gets the white flag at the end of this year's Monte Carlo Grand Prix.
3 The Russian gymnast, Nelli Navelikova, now on the rings ...
4 And now they're coming to the last fence of this year's Derby ...
5 Another basket for Hooper; that puts Canada into the lead for the first time in the match: 38 to 35.
6 So with this 6 - 2, 6 - 3 victory, Abdul Kabul becomes the new squash singles champion, taking over from his doubles partner, Sadiq Khan.
7 Two more gates, two more poles, he's through them, round them. Nothing can stop him now becoming the new downhill ski champion of the world.
8 Such a talented athlete, strong swimmer, powerful cyclist, a first-class shot, he would be almost sure to win the Modern Pentathlon if he was a better rider.
9 Uwakana, in the slightly darker shorts, Japanese judo champion for the past four years, facing his team-mate, Onawawa ...
10 After three rounds of golf, we have a three-way tie between the three Americans all on a total of 148, with Juan Carlos one shot behind.
11 In this 4 by 100 individual medley, at the end of the third leg, as they change from backstroke to freestyle, Allegro is leading by a metre from ...
12 And that's very good marks for the Olympic ice-dance champions; two 9.7s, one 9.8, two 9.9s and a 9.6.
Practice 2

[1] Explain the rules of at least two of the following sports. Then give any tips you can think of about how to do each sport well.

1 polo 6 weightlifting
2 baseball 7 netball
3 croquet 8 squash
4 rugby 9 volleyball
5 cricket 10 bull-fighting

[2] Describe your sporting heroes, both now and when you were a child. Explain why you admire(d) them.

[3] Describe, in as much detail as possible, a match, competition or race that you will never forget.

[4] Discuss what you think are the main problems facing international sport today.

[5] Discuss your attitude - angry, enthusiastic or indifferent - towards sports that:

   a use animals.
   b use machines.
   c involve physical violence between contestants.

[6] Write a paragraph from your novel in which the hero, after months of hard training, goes out on the track for the 1500 metres final.

[7] *Sport divides more than it brings together.* Write part of a magazine article that you submit on this theme.

   • Add here any other words about sport that you may come across.

---

Answers

Jigsaw reading: 1, 5 boxing 2,9 chess 3,13 motor racing 4,8 long jump
6,14 800 metres race (running) 7,12 tennis 10,18 relay race 11,17
football 15,20 high jump 16,19 throwing the discus (field event)

Game 1:1 table tennis 2 tennis 3 swimming 4 fencing 5 golf
6 horse-racing 7 archery 8 water-skiing 9 gymnastics
10 snooker (or billiards) 11 cycling 12 football 13 boxing (or
wrestling) 14 chess 15 badminton 16 ice hockey

Riddle: a record
Reading 1

Spend some time trying to absorb the language of the theatre and stage contained in this text.

Confessions of a would-be actor

After playing Joseph in a nativity play at the age of five and a half, I can still remember the three lines I had - my theatrical career really took off. I was chosen to be the back end of the pantomime horse in our school end-of-term Christmas show. Success there, or rather lack of it - the horse's seams came apart soon after our first entrance - led to my being given the job of stagehand for all future productions. Even scenery falling over in the middle of an Italian light opera and last-minute panic over the missing set for an ancient Greek tragedy failed to persuade our drama teacher that I would be less of a risk on stage than off. (That, in fact, is not strictly true. I did have a walk-on part once in a French bedroom farce - as an apparently dumb police constable - but to everyone's horror I tried to exit with the wrong character at the end of the wrong scene, stage left instead of stage right.)

On leaving school, I joined an amateur dramatic society, full of enthusiasm but rather short on experience, technique and timing. For some years, I was restricted to bit parts in sketches, satirical revues and one or two slapstick comedies. My finest hour came when I had to stand in for a member of the cast who had been taken ill - I was the general male understudy - and take the part of the villain in a Victorian melodrama; lots of overacting and asides to the audience. I had only a very short rehearsal beforehand and I thought my performance was reasonably competent. The producer, however, suggested that I took up some less public hobby, like pottery or rug-making.

Not deterred, I joined a repertory company as stage and costumes manager, also responsible for props and make-up. And I was their prompter as well. During my time with them I wrote a number of scripts, most of which were rejected, but one of which was accepted and performed. It turned out to be the most terrible flop. I didn't do much acting there - just one part, if I remember rightly, in the chorus of a musical, a revival of West Side Story. Nobody 'discovered' me. What I had always wanted was to play the hero in something like Romeo and Juliet or to have a leading part in an Oscar Wilde comedy of manners. When I turned fifty, however, I began to accept that it was probably not going to happen.

You can imagine my surprise and delight, then, when some nights ago I learned that I had landed the title role in Shakespeare's classic play Macbeth with the Royal Shakespeare Company. I couldn't believe my luck. Macbeth: that superb monologue before Duncan's murder, the passages with the witches on the heath, that fantastic Tomorrow and tomorrow and tomorrow speech in Act Five, Scene 5. The dress rehearsal, with co-stars Olivier and Glenda Jackson, was a dream. And with the first night to follow - ten curtain calls - bouquets - reviews the next day: 'Smash hit! Don't miss it!' 'A box office winner!' 'Triumph for new Macbeth!' 'A Star is ...'.

And then that horrible ringing sound in my ears ...
**Practice 1**

[1] On the right are some of the ways we classify films. On the left are some film titles. Match each title with the most appropriate kind of film from the column on the right.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Film Title</th>
<th>Kind</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Last Days of the Black Rock Gang</td>
<td>cartoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bridge over the Seine</td>
<td>western</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John loves Mary loves Tom loves Judy</td>
<td>science fiction movie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Born to be a Star</td>
<td>disaster movie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light Years from Yesterday</td>
<td>travelogue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Blood of the Innocents in White</td>
<td>documentary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The London to Glasgow Express</td>
<td>war film</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avalanche</td>
<td>(Hollywood) musical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goldilocks at the Teddy Bears' Picnic</td>
<td>horror film</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wildlife and the West</td>
<td>blue movie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bonaparte and Alexander</td>
<td>thriller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Casablanca to Cape Town in 20 days</td>
<td>historical film</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Life begins at Midnight in Amsterdam</td>
<td>romantic comedy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[2] In what situation might you say the following? Match each question with one of the situations on the right.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Situation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What's on?</td>
<td>You want to know whether the actors are any good.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who's in it?</td>
<td>You can't see a free seat anywhere.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What's it about?</td>
<td>You need to know what time to get to the cinema.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where's it on?</td>
<td>You're thirsty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What time does it start?</td>
<td>You're leaving the cinema with a friend.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where shall we sit?</td>
<td>There are three cinemas in town and you don't know which is showing the film you want to see.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where's the bar?</td>
<td>You haven't a clue what to go and see.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What did you think of it?</td>
<td>It might be a horror film and you wouldn't enjoy that.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[3] Here are some of the categories for the annual **Academy Award Winners**. Each winner gets an **Oscar**. Look back over the past few years - not just this year - and note down who you would give your awards to for as many as you can of the categories below. If you don't know the name of the person involved, then just give the name of the film. If you are working in a group, compare and discuss your notes with a partner.

- Best film
- Best Actor
- Best Actress
- Best Supporting Actor
- Best Supporting Actress
- Best Director
- Best Original Screenplay (script)
- Best Screen Adaptation
- Best Cinematic Photography
- Best Editing
- Best Special Effects
- Best Original Score (music)
- Best Costumes / Wardrobe
- Best Title Sequences / Credits
- Best Short (film)
- Special Award for Services to the Cinema Industry, the motion picture business, the dream factory, the movie world
Game

There are, of course, more aspects to film-making than those listed above. Match each person (1 - 5) with what they would say (a - e).

1 Director
2 Producer
3 Continuity Girl
4 Clapperboard Man
5 Cameraman

a Can't you get on with the shooting? This is costing me money.
b Scene 24. Take 25!
c Your make-up's thicker and you're wearing a different dress.
d Clear the set! This is supposed to be a film studio! Get those damned extras out of here! Action! Cut!
e Rolling!

Reading 2

Finally in this unit - leaving aside nightclubs and floor shows, variety shows and puppet shows, music-hall and carnivals, fairgrounds and fashion parades, a song about the circus:

The whole thing's fake. The sawdust's like cake. The tent itself's unsafe, and it tilts. The singer's songs don't rhyme. The band can't keep in time. And the chap can never climb on to his stilts.

But the one saving grace in this fifth-rate place - The only act that's guaranteed to please — The only reason that I go to this rotten awful show Is that tiny little girl on the trapeze.

The juggler drops the balls. The tightrope walker falls. And performing fleas are always such a pain. The fire-eater's bald. And the audience are appalled As the lion-tamer's mauled yet again.

The clowns aren't funny. It's a total waste of money. I don't know why they have shows like these. The only thing worth seeing in the whole performance being That young twenty-year-old girl on the trapeze.

The ventriloquist moves his lips. The acrobat always trips. And the conjuror's got no tricks left up his sleeve. The high-diver's head is like a square loaf of bread. I wouldn't be seen dead in there, believe me.

If it wasn't for the fact that there's this super little act That gets me going weak at the knees, I think you know the reason why I come back every season: It's that middle-aged girl on the trapeze.

The ringmaster stutters. The comedian mutters. And the strong-man splutters in despair. The midget's five foot five; I'm surprised he's still alive Because the knife-thrower's knives go everywhere!
The Russian *sword-swallowers* have lost all their *followers*;  
So many knives they've borrowed stay below.  
And the *disappearing rabbits* with their rather special habits,  
Keep appearing just as rapidly as they go.

So even now, I must confess, the thing I like the best -  
I don't know if there's anyone who agrees —  
I've really just come back for that one three-minute act -  
It's that elderly artist on the trapeze.

**Practice 2**

1. Write or discuss the answers to these questions.

   1. Which *clip* from a particular film would you never tire of seeing?
   2. What *trailers* have you seen recently that really made you want to go and see the film?
   3. Can you think of any *scenes* from films you think should have been cut? Or can you think of any entire film you think should have been banned?
   4. Which of these features do you, in general, like a film to have:
      - a happy *ending*?
      - a complicated *plot* or a simple *storyline*?
      - lots of action?
      - a political or social *message*?
      - totally naturalistic *dialogue*?
      - larger than life or *true-to-life characters*?
      - (in the case of foreign films) *subtitles* or *dubbed dialogue*?
      - lots of close-up shots of people's faces?
      - long sequences of desert, jungle, etc?
      - a fair number of *stars* or a cast of 'unknowns':

5. What can the cinema offer that the theatre can't - and vice versa?
6. Which plays have you seen which you have also seen the *film* of? How did the two versions compare?
7. Would you let your ten-year-old son go off to Hollywood to be in a film, with or without you there?

2. Write a favourable *review* for a play you have seen.

3. Write an unfavourable review for a film you didn't like.

4. Write part of a *fan letter* from a young teenager to an actor or film star.
   - Add here any other words that you meet about the theatre, cinema or circus.

162
Games and hobbies

Reading

Have a look through the following extracts from a scrapbook. In it, the writer gives us an impression of the various pastimes and hobbies that he enjoyed at different times in his life.

As you read, ask yourself how his interests and activities compare with yours at each stage of your life. Decide what you and the writer have in common and how you differ. Also identify the words for the things in the illustrations.

0 to 5
Nursery Rhymes
with Mummy and Daddy
Jack and Jill
went up the hill
and Fairy Tales
with Uncle Bill
Once upon a time
there was a handsome prince.

Swings and roundabouts
climbing frame
see-saw, slide
and playground games
castles in the sandpit
bucket and spade.
‘Jennifer pushed me.’
‘He called me names.’

Dummies and rattles
and big soft toys
teddy bears, dolls
that walked and talked
abacus, bricks
and jigsaw puzzles
crayons, plasticine,
paints and chalk.

6 to 10
Feet stuck
on the rocking horse
toes squashed
on the tricycle
knees grazed
coming off the scooter
bottom sore
from the bicycle.
Games and hobbies

Model aeroplanes
sticky fingers
missing bits
and breaking things
train sets
and making pastry
cut-out shapes
and rolling-pins.

Keeping pets
like mice and hamsters
rabbits in their hutch
and snakes in jars
puppies and kittens
in kennels and baskets
canaries in cages
with budgerigars.

On Sundays, we went to Sunday School. 'Well, you're going, whether you like it or not. Whatever would Jesus say?' Before that, we usually managed half an hour of skipping in the garden. I still think giving my little sister my treasured three-year-old skipping rope was my most generous juvenile act. Afterwards, there was hopscotch on the pavement — were we really as blind to traffic as children are today? - or, if it was raining, 'doctors and nurses' indoors. And then, every now and then, horror of horrors, a party with party games like pass the parcel and musical chairs. I am convinced that my present unease in the company of ladies can be traced back to the afternoon when, as a seven-year-old and as a forfeit — or was it a prize? - I was required to leave the party room with a gigantic ten-year-old girl and plant a kiss on one of her cheeks.

Boy Scouts
and Girl Guides
uniforms, badges
passwords, camps.
Collecting coins,
the future numismatist.
The would-be philatelist,
collecting stamps.

Birds' eggs
and garden insects,
wild flowers
carefully placed on
scrapbook pages
or under mattresses.
No-one had heard of conservation.

Reading comics,
first Mickey Mouse
then Roy of the Rovers
every week.
Adventure stories like
The Secret Seven,
marbles and dominoes,
hide-and-seek.

'My turn'. 'I wasn't ready'
'You cheat!' 'That's not fair!'
'You were looking!' 'No, I wasn't!'
'I'm not playing any more!'
Games and hobbies

11 to 15
Life became slower. My friend Mary went off for hours:
knitting - huge needles, dropped stitches, uneven rows, 'Aren't I clever?'
sewing - I swear it took her half an hour to thread the needle every time.
doing embroidery - she managed one flower on a cushion cover in seven and a half months.
doing crochet — 'Now I'm really grown-up!'

We got involved with:
chemistry sets - the smell of rotten eggs, the sound of breaking glass.
and flying my kites in the April winds.
I didn't see her so much after that, except for our board games together:
progressing from Snakes and Ladders — Your go.'Pass the dice.' - to Monopoly,
to draughts, to backgammon, to chess.
She never liked card games, but we did finally graduate from snap to whist, to canasta, to bridge. We stopped short of poker; poker came later.

[Image of playing cards]

ace of spades king of hearts queen of clubs jack (knave) of diamonds
'You shuffle the cards, she can cut them, and I'll deal them. Perhaps I can deal myself a good hand. It's about time I won some tricks.'
She got bored by my riddles - 'What will go up a chimney down but won't come down a chimney up?' 'Don't know.' 'An umbrella.' 'Huh!'
and made paper aeroplanes with my romantic poetry - 'You and the Daffodils,' to Mary, love George.
She went to ballet lessons and then tap-dancing classes. I was sent to ballroom dancing lessons. Does anyone know the difference between a tango and a quickstep, a waltz and a foxtrot, a samba and a cha-cha? 'Take your partners for a military two-step,' I hated every minute of it.

16 to 20
We got interested in cookery - 'The recipe said it would rise like bread, but it's as flat as a pancake!'
I took up photography - expensive camera, telephoto lens, light-meter built in, hours in the darkroom, developing and printing, photos of thumbs and backs of heads.
Then came her crosswords — Clues: 1 Across: see 23 Down. (Solution below) -
and word games and puzzles.
And then, all of a sudden, hi-fi:
Mon: check circuits on amplifier / tuner.
Tue: replace leads and jackplugs on all microphones.
Wed: overhaul cassette recorder, clean and demagnetise heads.
Thurs: fit new record deck and stylus.
Fri: sort out balance of speakers; correct distortion on left channel.
Sat: strip and check wires leading to phono input sockets; test all connections.
Sun: play some music.
And nine months later, motorcycle maintenance:
oily rags and dungarees; stripping engines, decoking, tuning, changing wheels, plugs, pistons, oil; sweating.
Then there were outdoor activities like:

- skiing, skating,
- surfing, canoeing,
- horse-riding, wind-surfing,
- parachuting, hang-gliding,
- mountaineering, pot-holing,
- roller-skating, skateboarding,
- water-skiing, hiking,
- camping and shooting.

My friends all told me they were great fun. I enjoyed the occasional picnic but my favourites were indoor activities like:

- fruit machines and pin-tables,
- table football and video games,
- pool, darts,
- skittles and bowling.

We can't all be outdoor types.

21 to 25

Once we went hunting together, all red and white - red for the jacket, the fox, the blood, white for the teeth, the trousers, her face.

That started her on a year or two of anger and protest:

- meetings, demonstrations, placards and posters:
- 'Down with whatisname,'
- 'Stop the whatsit',
- 'Hands off thingummy,' 'Soandsou out!'

Meanwhile, I began gambling:

- £20 bets at fantastic odds of 10 to 1,
- winnings of £200 plus my stake money back, if the horse that I'd bet on had won.

She then gave up politics for dress-making -

- You can't go wrong if you follow the pattern.'

I flirted with gardening - fun for a week -

- 'Sow in boxes, in moist compost, plant out carefully, water daily.'

Then I turned to alcohol, brewing my own beer,

- distilling my own whisky, making my own wine.

She did basket-weaving, then pottery for a while:

- handleless jugs and unusable vases,

while I tried my hand at carpentry.

I was in danger of becoming a do-it-yourself fanatic when,

- suddenly and gloriously, I fell in love with cars.

After my love-affair with cars, what else was there left?

On and off, there was:

- fishing - apparently the most popular outdoor pastime in Britain. Happiness for millions is a rod and a line, a good catch on the hook,
- playing bingo - a strange phenomenon, a party game with gambling, and lots of prizes.

- newspaper competitions — 'And this week, YOU can win any or All of the Prince's wedding presents!'

- yoga, jogging and keep-fit classes - 'Touch your toes! Don't bend your knees!'

- Cartwheels, forward rolls, somersaults, press-ups.

Anyone who can do all that must be made of rubber.

And, of course, TV

- and ante-natal classes, and then:

Nursery Rhymes

with Mummy and Daddy

*Humpty Dumpty*

sat on a wall,

and *Once upon a time*

there was a boy called *Hansel*.

Fairy Tales

with Uncle Paul.
Practise

[1] Note down the hobbies and activities you enjoyed from the age of five to the age of fifteen.

[2] Write or discuss the answers to these questions.

1. What hobbies do you now regret not taking up when you were younger? Include any hobbies that you gave up too soon.
2. What activities will you encourage your children to enjoy? Are there any you will discourage them from?
3. Is there any reason why both girls and boys shouldn't be actively interested in any of the pastimes listed above?

[3] Practise giving instructions on how to do your favourite hobby or at least three of activities 1-6.

1. play a card-game
2. dance a dance
3. look after hi-fi equipment properly
4. make wine
5. catch a big fish
6. develop photos

[4] Write a few paragraphs of a speech, in which you complain that girls and boys are treated very differently from an early age and therefore grow up with very different roles in society.

[5] Write, in dialogue form, a conversation between a bored teenager and a parent who's trying to interest him or her in some worthwhile hobby.

[6] Write a reply to a friend who has written asking for your advice on how to keep her six-year-old twins amused during the long summer holidays.

Add here any other activities that you know or hear of:
Music and the Arts

Study

Arrange the instruments below so that they are in a more normal orchestral formation.

Practice I

List the instruments in the orchestra that you would most like to play well. Also note down any that you would never like to learn and why.

Imagine that you are going to form your own supergroup, inviting famous pop stars and other musicians to join you. Choose the instrument that you would like to play from the list of instruments and types of singer below, in the line up for the recording session for this pop group or rock band. Then note down the instrument or vocals of your choice from each line and who you will invite to play them or to sing.

1 lead vocals
2 lead guitar (electric)
3 acoustic guitar, 12-string guitar, sitar
4 bass guitar, backing vocals
5 drums
6 extra percussion, tambourine, maracas, bongos
7 keyboards, organ, electric piano, synthesiser
8 mandolin, steel guitar, electric fiddle (violin)
9 harmonica, mouth organ, Jew's harp, kazoo
10 saxophone, rhythm guitar, backing vocals
The arrangements, production, sound engineering and mixing are still to be organised. Think of the records that you have got at home. Choose a recording company or label that you would write to, in the hope that they will help you to find a studio and market your record.

Now you’ve got your latest single release recorded, when are you going to go out on the road and do some live concerts? Note down the five venues that you would choose for a European tour.

Game

Look at some more instruments on the right that we can strike, blow, shake, strum or pluck. Which of each pair below is the one in the picture?

1 banjo or ukelele?
2 harpsichord or spinet?
3 accordion or bagpipes?
4 cornet or bugle?
5 recorder or xylophone?
6 castanets or tom-tom?

Now, a variation on a BBC radio game. You're being sent off to a desert island tomorrow with a toothbrush, bottle-opener and record-player. Make a list of the pieces of music that you are going to take with you. You're allowed some or all of the following:

2 symphonies
2 concertos or sonatas
1 choral or orchestral work: oratorio, cantata, etc.
1 opera: (grand, light, comic or operetta)
1 additional piece or set of classical music: a rhapsody, overture, collection of nocturnes, serenades, studies, etc.
1 jazz LP: (modern or traditional)
1 album: folk, soul or blues
1 LP by a group: (pop or rock)
1 solo album: male or female vocalist
1 other selection of your choice: brass band music, a film score, nursery rhymes, electronic music, pub sing-songs

[3] In this short quiz, answer each of the questions.

1 Which of these is not normally religious?
   a a hymn  b a psalm  c a carol  d a ballad
2 Which of these would normally make the least noise?
   a a round  b a lullaby  c an anthem  d the refrain of a madrigal
3 Which of these is the odd one out?
   a a duet  b a triplet  c a quartet  d a quintet
4 Which order should these be in, starting from the top, that is to say the voice that can sing the highest notes?
   a baritone  b bass  c tenor  d contralto (alto)  e soprano (treble)
5 In what order, chronologically, did these names become popular?
   a a jukebox  b a record deck  c a phonograph  d a gramophone
   e a record-player  f a musical box
Reading

Read through the text below and see how many of the musical terms contained in these reminiscences can be of use to you.

Try it again
I spent nearly six years studying and practising the piano at school; that's to say, four years playing scales and arpeggios, then eighteen months let loose on actual pieces of music.

My teacher, Mr Pearson, was the sort of person who thought that anyone who didn't have perfect pitch was educationally subnormal and as for pupils - like me - who had difficulty in reading music and never really began to master sight-reading, well, there was really no hope in life.

Looking back, I can see that he was not particularly modern or enlightened in his approach. There were weekly tests along the lines of:
'How many flats are there in the key of A flat major?'
'How were Bach's ideas on melody, harmony and counterpoint significant?'
'What was the opus number of Mozart's Eine Kleine Nachtmusik?' and lots of unanswerable questions about bass clefs and treble clefs, etc.

Still, we persevered together for those six years, despite my numerous handicaps. For a start, my sense of rhythm - especially for anything syncopated - was virtually non-existent.

'How many beats in the bar, Haskins?'
'Three, sir.'
'Then kindly stop trying to squeeze in five.'

Then, being so small, neither of my hands could span a full octave which meant that keys were rarely struck by the finger recommended and that, particularly on the black notes, the little finger fell short of expectations.

'Is there normally a B flat in a B major chord, Haskins?'
'No, sir.'

'Right, then spare us it, will you?'

It wasn't that I didn't try. On the contrary, I had visions of one day performing in concerts and recitals, if not as a soloist, at least accompanying guest singers and instrumentalists. Somehow, the visions became fainter and fainter.

'I think if Beethoven had wanted a minor chord just there, Haskins, he would have written one. Don't you?'

So the years went on, endless variations on a single theme, dozens of arrangements of one basic tune, which I swear he composed himself. I must admit there were times when I thought of changing instruments - going back to the woodwind class, where I had bitten through three oboe reeds in one session, or the strings department, where I kept dropping the viola bow, or the percussion wing, where I had snapped two drumsticks inside ten minutes, or the brass class, where I had nearly swallowed a trumpet mouthpiece. But I didn't. I stayed with Mr Pearson and his finger exercises, the wrong notes, the missed entrances, the 'Try it again's'. I suppose I was lucky that you can't play the piano out of tune. I'm sure if it was possible to play flat, I would have done.

What's the difference between an F sharp and an F natural, Haskins?'
'A semitone, sir."

'Correct. Now, if you could remember that while you're playing, you might not make such a pig's ear out of one of the most beautiful melodies Brahms ever composed. Try it again.'
ART FOR BEGINNERS

Part One
Chapter 1
Early Beginnings
Stone Age cave drawings
classical Greek sculpture
Byzantine art
Flemish tapestries
Gothic architecture

Page 4

Chapter 2
The Golden Age
the Renaissance period
the Baroque age
the Romantic era
the Neo-Classicists

Page 36

Chapter 3
Recent Developments
Impressionism
the Symbolists and Expressionism
Cubism to pop art

Page 81

Part Two
Chapter 4
Choosing a Style
still life
portrait painting
landscapes
abstract art
mosaics and murals

Page 123

Chapter 5
Choosing your Medium
sketching and engraving
watercolours
oil-painting

Page 159

Chapter 6
Choosing a Subject
form, colour and tone
perspective
balancing foreground with background

Page 180

Appendix One
Art Galleries of the World
where are the masterpieces? the most famous collections?
the best exhibitions?

Appendix Two
Building a Collection
originals and reproductions, restoring, framing, hanging

171
Practice

Choose the part of the above book that you would like to read first. Give your reasons.

Describe two of your favourite paintings and why you like them. If possible, find them in a book so that you can refer to them or show them to other people. If you can't, then sit and look through a book of famous works of art and decide which ones you like and which ones you don't. Consider whether you would want all, any or some of them in your sitting room.

Describe your experience of learning to play a musical instrument or give the reasons why you never did so.

Discuss or write notes on the improvements in sound quality on records and tapes during your lifetime. Does the excellence of production nowadays disguise a lack of musical quality, technique or interest?

Choose a song or piece of music and explain what you like and don't like about it. Then compare it with a similar piece of music of your choice.

Describe how you would arrange a popular folk song for recording with the singers and instruments of your choice.

Write a magazine review of a recently released record you have heard - classical or modern.

Write, in dialogue form, a minute of conversation during one of Haskins's typical lessons with Mr Pearson.

You have been asked to speak at a discussion evening on the subject of 'Snobbery in Music'. Write the notes that will help you in your speech to express your opinions.

Add here any other words about music and the arts as you meet them.
Cooking, eating and drinking

Reading

1 Look carefully below at the different things that can be made in the kitchen.

Why it should be me that goes out to work: an extract from the diary of a frustrated and indecisive housewife or -husband.

08.30 ‘Bye, bye. Have a nice day! ... Now what can I do for their dinner today? Something simple but nourishing, tasty but not too 'hot' or spicy, not too exotic but not too plain.... I've got a few eggs; I could give them to them poached — on toast — or scramble them, or fry them, or ... no, they don't like boiled eggs. I suppose I could make an omelette ... or a soufflé - they'd like that. The trouble is, my souffles never rise. Besides, I'd really been planning to use those eggs in a cake — a nice vanilla sponge. I've got lots of flour, butter, sugar, vanilla essence and icing sugar to dust it; and for a filling I could use those blackcurrants from the garden. Lovely!

11.00 Then again, those blackcurrants are so nice and fresh, it seems a pity to put them in a cake. Better to have them raw after dinner. Or perhaps I ought to stew them; they'll probably need a bit of sweetening. I could put them into a fruit salad, or perhaps a trifle - we haven't had one for a long time.... But I did say that I was going to bottle them this year, preserve them, or make jam; you can even make chutney from blackcurrants.

12.30 This is not helping towards dinner. Concentrate! ... How about a blackcurrant tart for dessert? The pastry would be no problem; puff pastry, perhaps, I can manage that. I could make a flan - that would make a nice change. And while I'm making pastry for the base of the flan, I might as well double the amounts and use the rest for a few savoury vol-au-vents and perhaps a round of shortbread. If there's any left over, I could always use it up on some biscuits or macaroons — the kids would love that. In fact, I could really go to town and make a quiche for all of us, or fish and chips — basic pancake batter, nothing to it, really.

14.30 No, I've got it! Forget the flan. A meat pie! A gigantic meat pastry, perhaps. I've got some beef in the freezer, and some kidneys. Steak and kidney pie. ... It's not their favourite, of course. They often say they prefer their meat roast. But that meat's no good for roasting. I could braise it. I suppose, but that takes such a long time.... I could mince it and then ... No. Perhaps if I made it into a stew — a big casserole; that's easy enough. ... But if I don't do pastry, I'll have to cook some potatoes. Roast potatoes wouldn't go. Jacket potatoes are easiest, but the ones I've got are so small. We've had them boiled for the past five nights. They can't stand them mashed or creamed. Croquettes would take me all afternoon. Chips don't really go with stew.... Unless I change the stew to kebabs. ... No. Perhaps I'd better try and bake those little ones after all.
Come to think of it, I've got all I need to do some real baking: flour - plain and self-raising - and yeast for the dough. They'd appreciate some oven-warm bread. I could manage a few buns or scones, and they love those little croissant-type rolls I make for their birthdays. If they have some nice bread, they probably won't want more than a soup to go with it - a thick vegetable soup - that's it. I've got some carrots to go in and one or two other ingredients. Though I must say I prefer carrots raw, shredded in a salad.... In fact, a salad wouldn't be a bad idea. I've got oil, vinegar and mustard for a dressing. Talking of mustard, why don't I...

Oh hello. Have a nice day? What would you say to a nice Chinese takeaway this evening?

The proof that cooking isn't for me: a further extract from the diary of a person who is about to go out to work. After several weeks of Chicken Chow Mein for dinner, I decided that things had gone far enough. After all, there couldn't be that much to preparing a simple four-course meal once a day. We sat down together to plan a menu, then a programme of attack, adding a theatrical flavour for extra spice.

**Our first menu**

- Asparagus Soup - for starter
- Dover Sole
- Roast Chicken, potatoes, carrots, peas - main dish
- Peach Flan - for dessert

**Our first performance**

**Act One**

- scrub asparagus stems
- strip away the base
- cut out woody parts
- scale the fish, bone and fillet it
- cut off head and tail
- peel and wash potatoes
- top and tail carrots
- shell peas
- thaw frozen chicken
- skin peaches and remove stones

**Act Two**

- chop up asparagus or shred it
- place fish on greased foil
- slice potatoes
- dice carrots
- crack two eggs for the flan
- separate them

**Act Three**

- scald marrow bones for stock
- brown them in oven
- put in large pan; add other ingredients
- bring to boil and simmer to extract juices
- strain through sieve or muslin
- brush fish with melted butter
stuff the chicken
cover the breast with bacon rashers
season and rub with lemon juice
cook in middle of pre-heated oven
sift flour and salt into bowl for pastry
cut up butter, rub into flour, mix or blend
add water, sprinkling evenly over surface
beat egg-whites and fold them into mixture
knead gently, then chill for 30 minutes

Act Four
pour stock over asparagus and boil
allow to bubble for an hour, stirring regularly
dress the fish
place in hot oven
steam vegetables
baste the chicken
roll out pastry
bake in oven
whip or whisk cream for topping

Act Five
warm the plates
skim the soup to remove fat, etc.
garnish the fish
coat with pre-prepared sauce (oh!)
drain vegetables
make gravy from stock
carve meat
grate nutmeg over flan
leave to cool

Finale
Serve

Epilogue
freeze left-overs

The next day I read the plan of action ... and went out to find a job. Chicken Chow Mein is OK, even though it has this rather strange after-taste.

Practice 1

Read the list of foodstuffs and the list of verbs. Note down what you can do to each of the foodstuffs by listing the appropriate verbs. Then take each verb and say which of the foodstuffs it can be used with.

1 eggs
2 potatoes
3 meat
4 pastry or dough
5 fish
6 cream
7 vegetables

roll scramble chip crack carve
scale mince knead blend grate
whip stew bone steam peel
dice beat stuff baste mash
braise chop poach whisk shred
Cooking, eating and drinking

Study and practice

To complete this unit, a look at drinks and the drinking habit. Note down the beverages below that you have tried. Beside each, put whether you like it or not and when you would normally drink it.

The cocktail you couldn't mix
It's funny, isn't it, how your friends never seem to get on well together? Let me introduce you to some of mine. They're nice people, all of them, but put them in a room together and the silence is shattering. I just don't understand it. I should have known they wouldn't get on, though, from their drinking habits.

Retired Colonel, William Smythe-Johnson, MBE:

double gins at his club with just a dash of tonic and a slice of lemon
claret at dinner and brandy, French cognac, after dinner
always has a cup of tea at four o'clock sharp

His wife, Wilhelmina:
dry martini most of the time
champagne cocktail when entertaining - vintage champagne

Will Smythe, bank manager:
scotch and bourbon, usually with ice, occasionally soda, mainly at home
went mad with duty-free schnapps after annual skiing holiday
German light white wine
sometimes treats himself to a glass of port after dinner

His wife, Helen:
Bacardi or other white rums with various mixers, most often coke
insists on a glass of medium dry sherry before evening meal
they share freshly ground coffee (never instant) at breakfast and offer the children pure, natural, unsweetened, nothing-added whole fruit juice

W. P. Smytheson, university professor:
a teetotaller - greatest love (after books) a cup of cocoa or drinking chocolate
in the comfort of his rooms
drinks mineral water at the functions he has to attend

Helena Johnson, fashion designer:
ocasionally a few vodkas in the lounge bar
vermouth - Cinzano, Dubonnet, etc. - at home
enjoys a good sparkling wine as an aperitif

Willy Johns, one of my best friends, a teacher:
Guinness (draught, not bottled) in the saloon bar
a lot of orange squash after cross-country runs with the boys

Billy Johns, unemployed at the moment:
either lager in the saloon bar or rough cider in the public bar; has had to cut down on drinking lately

Bill Smith, labourer:
drinks mild (dark beer) or bitter (brown beer) in the public bar
if he's won on the horses, he'll have a bottle of light ale and a whisky

His wife, Minny:
drinks milk stout, which makes her quite tipsy, or - less often - shandy (beer and lemonade), which doesn't.
keeps an undrinkable blackcurrant cordial (she calls it a liqueur) for when visitors come - visitors don't come very often
Practice 2

[1] Write or discuss the answers to these questions.

1. What do you think a typical evening meal would be for each of the people in the text about drinking habits?
2. What are the pleasant and unpleasant aspects of cooking for you?
3. Do you think, with the growing popularity of fast food, convenience food, junk food etc., we are losing forever the art of fine cooking and good eating?
4. How serious would you say alcohol(ism) is in your country and/or any other countries you have visited?

[2] Imagine you are an experienced barman or barmaid. You are showing a new employee around the bar. Write or act out your conversation, in which you talk about how the bar is run, the prices of drinks, what to give a customer if she/he asks for X, which glasses to use for what, where everything is, and so on.

[3] Write a detailed recipe for a dish you know how to cook well, perhaps with a few personal tips.

[4] Write a letter to a friend, describing the absolute disaster when you cooked dinner for your fiance(e).

[5] Write out the menu for the annual dinner dance of a club you belong to. It is quite a formal occasion, so choose a really nice four-course meal.

- Add here any other words about food and drink that you may meet.
Travelling

Reading

Read through this rather long text over the next day or so, noting some of the key words concerned with trains, boats, cars, coaches and planes. As you read, note down the details of each of the six journeys described.

Travel Broadens the Mind
June 29th ... June 30th ... July 1st. And they're off. Suitcases packed. Notes left for the milkman. Arrangements made for the budgerigar to be looked after. They're all off.

Uncle Bill and Auntie Jane are on the quayside at the cross-channel port of Dover - the first stage of their Mediterranean cruise — 'the voyage of a lifetime' their travel agent called it. They've been through customs (half an hour's delay while suitcases were emptied in search of missing passports) and they'll be embarking soon. When they go aboard, Bill will finally be allowed to take those boarding cards out of his mouth.

Granny's at the coach station armed with her special old-age pensioner's season ticket — a kind of awayday, runabout, extended period, half-price ticket rolled into one. Today she's off on a one-day sightseeing excursion to Stonehenge, Blackpool Tower and Canterbury Cathedral.

Julia's with her boyfriend at the airport, kicking their cases through the departure lounge of what they hope is Terminal 3 and the right place to be for the package holiday charter flight that their tour operator assured them would be leaving sometime this morning. To their right, the 1st class passengers are sipping champagne cocktails; to their left, those in economy and tourist class are drinking coffee from the machine and, under their feet, those on stand-by, are looking hopefully up from their sandwiches.

Mum and Dad are already on the open road. They decided to make an early start on their touring holiday through the Loire valley. 'Your turn to drive now. Come on, let's get moving. Switch on, then. OK, it's all clear. Pull out, there's nothing coming. Well, take the handbrake off. Right, indicate. Come on, drive away. At last! Right, keep over. Keep to the right. Change gear, then. Come on, accelerate!'

'Porter!' 'Sir?' 'How much?' '50p.' 'No thanks; I'll manage my own luggage.' Uncle Mac is about to board the 10.40 inter-city express to Glasgow for a fortnight's holiday back in the homeland. 'Do I have to change?' 'No, it's a through train, sir, non-stop all the way.' It looks as if quite a few expatriates have had the same idea. The compartments all look full - especially the non-smokers - and the buffet car already sounds like Glasgow on the night of a Celtic-Rangers football match.

My brother's on the slip road of the M1 motorway at Junction 14, a rucksack on his back containing sleeping bag, biscuits and a change of underwear. He's been there for an hour and a half with his homemade sign saying 'Anywhere', trying to thumb a lift. There are no hostels or transport cafes in sight. The rucksack is getting heavier and the sky is getting darker. It's not much of a life sometimes, hitch-hiking.
Travelling

Oh dear. Granny's coach has got stuck in a traffic jam, a queue of cars as far as the eye can see. OK, so central Birmingham is on the direct route from Blackpool to Canterbury. But during the rush-hour? With thousands of commuters heading for home? Not a good plan. After all, what are bypasses and ringroads for? Right, you can overtake this one. There's no speed limit here. Oh, a diversion. You'd better turn off the main road. Pull across to the middle. Now keep in the right lane. I mean the left lane. I mean ...'

Crashes at take-off, mid-air collisions, flight recorders never recovered, no survivors ... This is your captain speaking wakes Julia's boyfriend up. Another nightmare over. The stewardess is smiling down at him. 'Fasten your seat-belts, please.'

Uncle Bill and Auntie Jane have settled into their cabin, unpacked their things and have gone up on deck. The sea is calm, the sunset is out of this world, and Uncle Bill is beginning to feel just a little bit seasick. They are due to set sail in half an hour.

Traffic is still crawling along behind and in front of Granny's coach. You can see the casualties by the side of the road, in lay-bys and on the grass verges - bonnets up, overheated engines, steaming radiators. The guide is into his second hour on the history of Canterbury Cathedral. 'Toilets 1 mile!' the cry is heard. There is great happiness.

'Right, here's a garage. 'Essence' must mean petrol station. We'd better pull in. Come on, slow down. Now, what's French for 'fill up the tank' and 'top up the battery' and...?'

Brother got a lift half an hour ago — for five miles. He was dropped at the next exit off the motorway and is now trying his luck on a minor road. There's a four-star hotel on his left (full board £35 a night for a single room), a guesthouse on his right (£15 per person for bed and breakfast) and a long road ahead of him.

Granny's having her packed dinner and gazing at the silhouette of Canterbury Cathedral against the night sky. No matter. She can sleep on the return journey (reclining seats and air-conditioning on the coach), and tomorrow's another day. There's a trip to the local brewery; that sounds much better.

Uncle Mac is sitting on his cases in the corridor outside the guard's van, surrounded by a ring of miniature bottles of scotch.

Julia's plane has landed. Her boyfriend's wondering whether to try and save something from the bottles of duty-free spirits he's just dropped. Julia's more interested in the connecting bus that's supposed to take them to their final destination.

Uncle Bill is on the bridge with the captain, asking him if there's any chance of being put ashore before the sea gets any rougher.

'Well, it's about time we found a bed for the night, don't you think? You see that motel on the left? There! There, where I'm pointing! There, the one with the ... Hey, pull up! Pull up! Oh dear, pull over. I wonder what the French is for 'I'm sorry, we appear to have dented your bumper'.

179
Practice

Which form of transport — train, car, boat or plane — do you associate with each of the words and phrases below?

1 set sail  6 fast lane  11 quayside  16 charter flight
2 a cruise  7 to indicate  12 mid-air collision  17 to disembark
3 traffic jam  8 sundeck  13 departure lounge  18 express
4 compartment  9 commuter  14 buffet car  19 bypass
5 bonnet  10 take off  15 pull in  20 guard’s van

Discuss or write the answers to these questions.

1 What, for you, are the pleasures and horrors of modern driving?
2 Look at the aspects of travel listed below. What are they like in your country? How are they different in any other country you have been to?
   a roads and car-drivers
   b airports
   c train services
   d hitch-hiking possibilities

What’s the furthest you have travelled in one 24-hour period? Describe the journey.

Think of films or film sequences - disaster movies, car chases, train adventures, sinking ships — that involve travelling. Describe in detail the ones that impressed you most.

Write or act out a conversation in a car. A driving instructor is taking a learner driver out for their first lesson. The learner knows absolutely nothing about cars.

Write, in dialogue form, a conversation in which three friends argue about how they should travel to a distant city for a long weekend. One thinks it would be best to go by car, the second is for going by train, and the third would prefer to go by coach.

Write a circular letter to parents on the travel arrangements for a school’s weekend excursion from London to the North of France, which you have organised.

Write a dramatic paragraph from your latest novel, as the hero tries desperately to get to the airport in time to catch his plane to Prague. It begins: Jackson jumped into his waiting Porsche and...

Add here any other words or expressions that you meet on your travels.
Study

See how many of the words and expressions highlighted below you can have ready for your future economic or financial discussions.

An A to Z of Economics: A Layman's Guide

A is for automation: bringing widespread, full-scale unemployment as the need for manual labour decreases.

B is for balance of payments: the discrepancy between the amount of money paid for imports and the amount of money received for exports.

C is for cost of living index: the system of measuring the annual rate of inflation. An index-linked pension scheme is not a bad thing to have on your side.

D is for devaluation: (The last resort? A panic measure?) an attempt, by reducing the value of one's currency, to increase the volume of exports compared to imports.

E is for expansionist policy: reflationary, pumping money into the economy, boosting investment and employment.

F is for fiscal matters: anything to do with the Treasury, particularly its revenue, especially through taxation.

G is for GNP or gross national product: the sum total of the money earned through a nation's goods and services.

H is for health, hospitals, housing: three outlets for government expenditure on public services. Other large items of public expenditure include defence, roads and communications, industry and trade, environmental services and social security benefits.

I is for interest rates: a weapon in the Government's armoury, used to deflate, stimulate or stabilise the economy.

J is for jobs: a key ball in the economist's juggling act. Are full employment and a low inflation rate mutually exclusive? The labour force in Britain can be divided into three categories:

1. primary industries (agriculture, fishing, mining, quarrying, forestry)
2. production industries (construction, gas, electricity, water, transport and manufacturing, etc.)
3. services (distributive trades, financial, business, professional and scientific, catering and tourism, national and local government).

K is for key industries: those essential to the economic welfare of a nation, such as oil in OPEC countries, precision engineering in Germany, grain in Canada, textiles in South East Asia, electronic goods in Japan.

L is for liquidity: gold and foreign exchange reserves are known as international liquidity, supervised to some extent by the IMF (International Monetary Fund).

M is for monetarism: Professor Milton Friedman's brainchild, concentrating on the control of money supply to conquer inflation.

N is for nationalised industries: state-owned corporations, struggling in Britain to break even and cover their costs, often having to be propped up by the Exchequer. Though often natural monopolies, they sometimes face competition from the private sector. During the eighties, several nationalised industries in Britain were privatised.

O is for output: the output per employee multiplied by the number of employees.
Business, industry and agriculture

gives a company or a nation's productivity. Britain's low rate of increase in this respect (often hardly any growth) used to be blamed on many things: poor industrial relations, the Common Market (EEC), world recession, and, most of all, on old capital equipment that the too slowly expanding workforce had to use. There was some improvement in the eighties, however.

P is for protectionism: a policy restricting free trade, encouraging the purchase of domestic products by imposing some form of import control or duty (tariffs).

Q is for import quotas: import restrictions. This is one way to reduce the deficit on current account, and regulating the volume of imports allowed in.

R is for pay restraint: some kind of incomes policy attempting to limit the size of wage increases or, in a wage freeze, to stop them completely. Which is fairer: a percentage increase across the board or a fixed sum for everyone?

S is for the Stock Exchange: the source of most long-term credit in Britain, as it is the centre for the buying and selling of stocks and shares. Some of these are fixed interest loans with dividends, some are gilt-edged securities. This can be a risky way to save if there is a stock market crash.

T is for taxation: the Government's main means of regulating its budget. Direct taxation concerns people's income; indirect taxes are levied on goods and services.

U is for underemployment: the overmanning of a plant, the result of restrictive labour practices still common today. Higher efficiency means fewer jobs.

V is for visible trade, as opposed to invisible trade. Visible exports are goods; invisible exports are services which are the basis of an international transaction.

W is for: Why bother about X, Y and Z?

Practice 1

*The Commercial See-saw*

Cover the column on the right. See if you can find the usual partner for each of the terms on the left.

**buying**
- export
- supply
- revenue
- net
- profit
- in the red
- borrowing
- credit
- wholesale
- stocks
- boom
- the private sector
- stated-owned industry
- management
- the boardroom
- skilled labour
- blue-collar workers
- take on new staff

**selling**
- import
- demand
- expenditure
- gross
- loss
- in the black
- lending
- debit
- retail
- shares
- slump, recession
- the public sector
- private enterprise
- workers, employees, staff
- the shop floor
- unskilled (or semi-skilled) labour
- white-collar workers
- lay off staff, make staff redundant
A Businessman or Businesswoman's Day
Note down the day-to-day business that is referred to in the diary below. You know he/she has to go to another meeting at 10.00. Rearrange his/her day, leaving one hour for lunch.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Activity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>09.00</td>
<td>In-tray / Out-tray; Dictate correspondence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Memo to staff re salary negotiations for 1 990</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Replies to Zurich re Consumer Association conference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>Discuss finishing touches to next year's brochures with HJ from agency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.00</td>
<td>See Managing Director: check VAT figures with head of Accounts Department</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.00</td>
<td>Meeting with Van Braun re Amsterdam deal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N.B Phone bank re delay on bridging loan for new plant transactions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.00</td>
<td>Working lunch with Chief Buyer from Swan &amp; Sons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(J. White take catalogues, etc. and file)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.00</td>
<td>Conference with Marketing Division Executives (raise questions on expense accounts for Sept.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Telex Tokyo customers re latest order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.00</td>
<td>interview applicants for position of Personal Secretary - Miss Johnson, Ms Greer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Issue Press Statement denying rumours of merger with J &amp; J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.00</td>
<td>Rocket for Smythe re disappointing sales figures - have ready latest balance sheets plus competitors' recent results: circular for all other sales reps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.00</td>
<td>Emergency Board Meeting on takeover bid by James &amp; James - prepare agenda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.00</td>
<td>Shareholders' annual cocktail party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A Farmer's Year
Below are some of the jobs a British farmer has to do during the course of a year. Help him to plan his diary. Read the activities. Then look at the planning chart on the next page. Write beside each season the months of the year that apply in your country. Then match each activity with a season, or even a month if you can.

To be done this year
- grape-picking
- reseeded
- calving
- replanting
- wood-collecting
- pruning, cutting back
- bringing the sheep in
- putting cattle out for grazing
- peak season for milking
- rearing of calves
- lambing
- feeding
- sheep-shearing
- and dipping
- silage-making
- harvesting, gathering in the crops, reaping
- mating of sheep and rams
- lambs to slaughter
- ploughing
- sowing
- crop-spraying
- fattening-up of calves
- insemination of cattle
- haymaking
### Practice

Discuss or write the answers to these questions.

1. What are the key industries in your country? Are they declining or growing?
2. What are some of the good and bad aspects of advertising: on the screen, on paper and in the street?
3. How do you imagine (or know) farming methods have changed over the past twenty-five years. How may they change in the next twenty-five years?

You are an investment expert. Write or act out a conversation in which you give a client advice on how he or she might invest £70,000 redundancy money.

Write a day's diary for either a bank manager or a farmer.

Write a letter to your MP, attacking the government's handling of either the current or a recent economic crisis.

An expert economist is giving a talk in your town this evening. Write down five questions you will want to ask him: five things you have never really understood about economics.

Add here any further expressions about business and employment you may meet.
Law and order, crime and punishment

Study and practice

Below you see the story of an extraordinary case in British legal history. The affair started in 1949 and was finally closed in 1966. At the moment, there are a number of gaps in the story. Use the words below to complete it.

The story began when a man called Timothy Evans was ... for the murder of his wife and baby. He was ... with the double murder, but a short time later one of the charges was ... and he was ... for the murder of his daughter only. During the ... Evans accused the man whose house he had been living in, John Christie, of the crimes, but no attention was paid to him. The ... found Evans ... and he was ... to death. An ... was turned down and he was ... in 1950. Some time later, more women's bodies were discovered in Christie's house: two, three, four, five, six. John Christie was the police's chief ... and they started a nationwide ... for him. He was soon ... Alleged ... by Christie while he was in ... cast doubt on the Evans hanging. When he went to ... , Christie ... that he had murdered Mrs Evans, but in private it was said that he ... to that crime. His ... of insanity with regard to other murders was rejected and he was ... of killing his wife. Soon afterwards there was an ... into the ... of Timothy Evans. The ... decided that justice had been done and Evans had been rightly hanged. It was only in 1966 that another ... was set up. This time it was decided that Evans had probably been ... and he was given a free ... Better late than never, as they say.

Quiz

Now a quiz on some points of law — English style. The answers may well be different in your country. Simply answer the questions Yes or No. The answers according to English law are printed at the end of the quiz.

1 Is it a crime to try and kill yourself?
2 Is it illegal to help somebody to commit suicide?
3 Can you be executed for murdering a policeman?
4 If, after a murder, all the victim's relatives plead: 'Please don't prosecute!' can charges against the suspected culprit be dropped?
5 If two armed thieves break into a house, guns in hand, and one of them shoots and kills the house-owner, is his accomplice guilty of murder?
6 If I surprise an intruder in my lounge at night stealing my millions, have I a legal right to assault him with a weapon?
7 If I set a trap - a fifty-kilo weight just above the front door — for any burglars who might try and enter the house, am I breaking the law?
8 After a divorce or legal separation, can a wife be required to pay alimony to her ex-husband?
9 If I promise to marry my girlfriend and then change my mind shortly before the wedding, can she take me to court?

10 If you said to your teacher in the middle of one of his lessons: You don't know the first thing about teaching!' could he bring a civil action against you?

11 Would I be in danger of committing an offence if I put an advertisement for my school in the paper saying: 'Male white teacher required'.

12 If, as a defendant (or the accused), I am not satisfied with the way my barrister has handled my defence, can I sue him?

13 If you were in my house - uninvited - and the ceiling, which had had a large crack in it for some time, caved in and broke your leg, would it be a good idea to consult your solicitor?

14 Can a person suspected of and charged with rape be allowed bail?

Answers

1 No, not any more.

2 Yes, even mercy-killing (euthanasia) is against the law.

3 No. Capital punishment was abolished in the 1960s.

4 No. Murder is a crime against society (this involves criminal law) and not just a civil matter between individuals.

5 Yes. Joint guilt. In the eyes of the law, both are guilty.

6 No - at least, only in self-defence.

7 Yes.

8 Yes.

9 No, not now. Some years ago she could have sued me for breach of promise.

10 Yes, he could claim it was slander (or libel, if you wrote it in a newspaper). He probably wouldn't, though, because of the legal costs.

11 Yes, because of the Sex Discrimination Act and the Race Relations Act.

12 No.

13 Yes. You could sue me for negligence and I would probably have to pay damages.

14 Yes.

Practice 1

There are many crimes and offences apart from the few mentioned above. Explain, define or give examples of the offences listed below.

blackmail, kidnapping, arson, trespassing, manslaughter, smuggling, forgery, bigamy, baby- or wife-battering, conspiracy, fraud, driving without due care and attention, mugging - robbery with violence, drug peddling, espionage - spying, shoplifting, treason, obscenity, bribery and corruption, petty theft

Which of the above would or could involve the following?

1 counterfeit money 4 a ransom 7 state secrets
2 pornography 5 heroin 8 contraband
3 hostages 6 a traitor 9 a store detective
2 Here is the story of a very unfortunate, irresponsible man called Mr N.E. Body. Imagine that he was stopped by the police at each and every point of the drama. Read about what happened and, after each piece of information you receive, decide what punishment he deserves. Here are some of the sentences you might wish to hand out:

You might feel the death penalty is in order, or life imprisonment, even solitary confinement. You could put him on probation, give him community service or impose a fine - anything from £10 to £1,000. You might consider corporal punishment (a short, sharp shock), a shortish prison sentence or, of course, you could make that a suspended sentence. You might make him pay compensation, or would you like to see him banned from driving? No? Well, his licence could be endorsed. Or would you dismiss the case, find him not guilty of any crime, acquit him, find the case not proved?

1 Mr Body drank five pints of beer and five single whiskies in a pub, got into his car and drove away.
2 He did not drive dangerously but exceeded the speed limit as he wanted to catch up with a friend who had left his wallet in the pub.
3 As he was driving along, a little girl ran into the road and he knocked her down.
4 There was no way he could have stopped, drunk or sober.
5 The little girl suffered only bruises and superficial injuries.
6 Mr Body's wife had left him two days before.
7 Six months later, it was clear that the little girl was to suffer from after-effects of the accident and would stutter for many years.
8 Mr Body had never previously received any summons for traffic offences.
9 The little girl admitted that it was all her fault.
10 The passenger in Mr Body's car was killed outright as he went through the windscreen.

[3] Write or discuss the answers to these questions.
1 Which aspects of the law seem unsatisfactory to you?
2 What punishments would you, as a judge, give for the crimes in Practice 1?
   You may need to specify cases and give particular instances.
3 How have criminals been portrayed in films you have seen recently? Were the criminals portrayed as heroes, idiots or evil individuals?
4 What - in detail — would happen to you in your country if you were caught:
   a speeding in your car?
   b in possession of soft drugs?
   c with a gun in your pocket?
   d breaking into a house?

[4] Write a judge’s summing up after a trial, reminding the jury of the witnesses’ testimony and advising them on how to reach their verdict.

[5] You have just read an article supporting corporal punishment with the headline 'A short, sharp shock is the only answer for most of today's criminals'. Write to the newspaper, putting the opposite view and criticising what was probably in the article.

Add here any other words or expressions about crime, punishment and the law that you may meet.
Quality

This unit is in the form of six passages, each of which deals with the good, the bad and the ugly; complimentary and uncomplimentary words, from the unbelievably beautiful to the indescribably horrible. Over 150 adjectives are included, so don't read all of them at once.

Reading 1

First, notice the contrasts in these excerpts from a letter.

Dear Helpful Hatti,
I am writing to you about my sister and all the problems I - .
She has got exquisite features - a classic profile - a scintillating smile - a stunning figure - an attractive personality - and a marvellous sense of humour. I have got a very plain face - very ordinary feature - (according to my friends) a rather ugly smile - a nondescript figure - a shallow and unappealing character - and a coarse sense of humour. What should I do? She is a sparkling conversationalist - a fabulous dancer - a graceful mover - super-efficient at her job — a talented sportswoman - and a gifted musician. I am a very dull conversationalist - a clumsy dancer - an awkward mover - an incompetent fool in the office - useless at sport - and hopeless at all musical instruments. What advice would you give me? She is always well-dressed, smart, elegant — extremely ladylike — very refined - exceptionally well-mannered - and invariably polite to everyone. I always look shabby and scruffy — I tend to be rough - common - vulgar - and rude. What can I do about it? She is very cultured — well-educated - well-read. I was always backward at school - semi-literate - and am now very ignorant. She is bright - intelligent- witty - and clever. I am slow - dim - 'daft', my mother says - 'thick', says my father. Please help me. I look forward to hearing from you.

Now read excerpts from two reviews of the same film.

- an absorbing film - a fascinating insight into — a well thought-out plot - brilliant acting - superb photography - delicate direction by - many dazzling moments - a powerful climax - thoroughly enjoyable - totally satisfying - a memorable film.

What do you think these two people are disagreeing about on this and the next page?

A ' - a spectacular occasion - exciting movements - sensational colour - thrilling speed - a gripping climax - tremendous fun -
B ' - a senseless 'sport' - mindless violence - brutal - primitive - savage and degrading - inhuman - a disgraceful exhibition -
Quality

an enthralling spectacle - a rewarding experience!
a scandalous abuse of innocent animals - revolting!

Practice 1

Choose the most suitable of the four given words to complete each of the sentences below.

1 He's not only tedious, he's also ...
a boring b incompetent c super-efficient d brilliant
2 Despite its director's high reputation, the film was ...
a extraordinary b gripping c embarrassing d powerful
3 Can't always be elegant; sometimes I enjoy wearing ...
clothes.
a scintillating b scruffy c shallow d rude
4 Finally at the end, things hotted up; the ending was really ...
a gripping b delicate c chaotic d ludicrous
5 Not all film stars are beautiful; some are quite ...
a exquisite b stunning c vulgar d plain
6 We need someone well-educated and ...
a illiterate b dim c coarse d well-read
7 He's an extremely ...
 pianist.
a graceful b gifted c exceptional d refined
8 It wasn't exactly exciting, but it was certainly ...
a enthralling b absorbing c thrilling d gripping

Reading 2

1 Read these two opinions of the same holiday resort.

Excerpts from the tour operator's brochure:
Come to sunny Sandshire ... magnificent views ... unforgettable scenery ... a splendid cathedral, well worth visiting ... and many other impressive buildings ... quaint little villages ... picturesque harbours ... enchanting bays ... gorgeous beaches ... pleasant climate ... colourful night-life ... stimulating atmosphere ... delightful for a holiday ... ideal for all the family ...

What George Grumbleweed had to say:
Well, the whole area's rather drab and unwelcoming ... the cathedral is a monstrosity, absolutely hideous ... most of the other buildings are pretty grotesque, too ... the villages are all colourless and characterless ... at night they're completely dead ... by the sea it's really ghastly ... the water's filthy and there's a frightful smell ... the coastline's very bleak ... it's a horrible place ...

totally unsuitable for holidays ...

p.

And now two post cards from the same resort:
And, lastly, a musical disagreement:

A What a **lovely** song!
B Do you think so?
A Don't you think it's **beautiful**?
B I think it's **terrible**.
A Very **catchy**.
B **Monotonous**.
A **Tuneful**.
B **Repetitive**.
A **Original**.
B **Corny**.
A **Effective**
B **Idiotic**.
A Quite **moving**.
B **Rubbish**.
A I've heard worse.
B Have you? Poor you.

**Practice 2**

Act out or write a conversation in each of the situations below.

1 You are with a friend, on your way home from a cabaret that you have both enjoyed enormously.
2 You are with a friend, on your way home from a terribly boring conference that you have had to sit through for the past eight hours.
3 You have just seen a film which you thought was great and your friend hated.
4 You have just seen a TV programme that you thought was disgusting. You phone the BBC and speak to the Complaints Manager.

Think of a view that you used to love but now find really unattractive. Describe how what you can see has changed.

Write a description for one of your short stories of the most unpleasant person any of us are likely to have the misfortune to meet.

Write, in dialogue form, a conversation in which two people disagree about the merits of some paintings as they walk together around an art gallery.

Add here any other words or expressions about quality that you may meet.
Reading

Let your eye run over the following lists over the next day or so, to remind you of a range of time expressions.

Life was hard

- in prehistoric times
- in olden times
- back in the fifth Century
- in the dim and distant past
- before the Industrial Revolution
- at the turn of the century
- in those days
- a few generations ago
- between the wars
- in the late forties
- when I was little
- in the early sixties
- from 1960 to 1965
- when I was in my teens
- between 1965 and 1970
- in the mid-eighties
- this time last year
- until this year.

Life has been hard

- for as long as anyone can remember
- ever since the war ended
- over the past twenty years
- from the late sixties until now
- for the past few years
- during the last couple of months
- lately.

Life is hard

- nowadays
- these days
- at present
- as things stand
- at the present time
- at this moment in time
- at this point in history.

Life is going to continue to be hard

- from now on
- for the next few months
- during the next few years
- over the next decade
- until the present situation changes
- for the foreseeable future
- for the time being.
Time

But things are bound to improve
in the coining years
before long
as time goes on
sooner or later
in years to come
within the next twenty years
in the 1990s.

And life will be much better
one day
this time next year
when we're old and grey
in another twenty years' time
decades from now
by the time our children grow up
by the end of this century
when we're all dead and gone
in the far-distant future
sometime in the twenty-fifth century
light years from now.

Reading

Now follow the adventures of a very busy lady.

Albert proposed to me
Bernard asked me
Colin did
David did his best
Edwin, too
Freddy tried
I think George did
I seem to remember Harry did
Ian did it with roses
Jock did it with chocolates
Kevin did it by letter
Larry sent a telegram
Martin mentioned something about it
Nevil thought we 'might make a go of it'
Oliver thought 'we'd make a good couple'

Peter did it on his knees
Robert referred to the possibility
Sam has asked me
Thomas left a note on my desk
Ulysses came out with it
Valentine shouted through the window
William brought the subject up on the phone
And Zac popped the question
I'm thinking it all over
I haven't got an answer
Zac obviously wants an answer
He's standing in front of me
I really can't give anyone an answer
I know Zac's going to ask me again
And William's going to shout down the phone
I think I might give Valentine a shout
I'll have to face Ulysses
I'm afraid Thomas will be back for a decision

ages and ages ago.
a long, long time ago.
one, many years ago.
a few years back.
not so long ago.
in the spring of '82.
the year before last.
at the end of January.
a short time ago.
a month or so ago.
one day quite recently.
a little while ago.
the other day.
about a fortnight ago.
the Friday before last
(or was it the previous Friday).
one afternoon last week.

earlier today.
within the last few hours.
an hour or so ago.
a couple of minutes ago.
just now.
just a moment ago.
a split-second ago.
now.
at the moment.
here and now.
at this very moment.
this minute.
any moment now.
at any moment.
in a second or two.
in a couple of minutes.
in an hour's time.
Brain teaser

Here's a little problem for you to solve. The answer is at the end of the book.

I always set my alarm-clock ten minutes fast - so that I have more time than I think in the mornings.

I keep my grandfather clock in the lounge, set at the correct time - to the second.

I set my non-digital watch fifteen minutes slow - so that I'm pleasantly surprised when it's time to finish work.

My alarm-clock gains fifteen minutes every twenty-four hours.

The grandfather clock keeps perfect time.

My watch loses fifteen minutes every day.

I set all three timepieces at midnight, by the BBC radio news, and wind them up.

At what time of day or night do all three show the same time?

Reading

Finally, have a look at this traditional rhyme and the text on the time of day and the time of year.

Thirty days has September,
April, June and November.
All the rest have thirty-one,
Excepting February alone
Which has twenty-eight days clear
And twenty-nine in each leap year.

The Ideal Day?

It would depend, of course, on the season. Endless days in late summer, in scorching July and baking August, cannot be compared with those short days in mid-winter, in frosty January and foggy December, in those weeks leading up to Christmas. Though the temperature in autumn, say early October when the days are closing in, may be similar to that in the middle of March and the rest of spring, their character is completely different. Now if you asked about May, well,...

I would get up well before dawn. Daybreak, just before and after sunrise, is a much-neglected part of the day. By first light, I would want to be on the terrace taking my first sip of coffee and second bite of toast. Everything is so peaceful in the
Time

early morning, long before the horrors of the rush-hour. Newspapers at breakfast-time, then I would go inside and play the piano for an hour or so. At about nine I would take to my study and continue with the next chapter of my memoirs, taking a mid-morning break for ‘eleven’s’. At half-past eleven sharp, I would stroll down to the village pub for my first drink of the day and then follow that, at about midday, with cocktails at a club in the company of friends. That would bring me up to lunchtime.

After a modest luncheon and during the hottest part of the day, I would take a walk in the forest, then possibly go for a drive. By mid-afternoon I would no doubt be feeling rather tired, so around teatime I would go back to bed for a couple of hours. I would come down again in time to watch The News at a quarter to six, then in the early evening - with some time on my hands until sundown - I might play records and read. At dusk, to catch the colours of the twilight hours, I would go outside and paint.

At nightfall, I would go inside to eat. (If I had some spare time beforehand, I would have a swim in my indoor heated swimming pool.) After dinner, towards ten o’clock, I would go out to meet friends at a discothenque then, at closing time - or before, around midnight anyway —join a party going down to the beach. After a(nother) swim and a few glasses of wine, I would be driven home to bed in the early hours.

How about you? What would your day be like?

Practice

[1] What - in full - is your answer to the question above: what would your ideal day be like?

[2] How have your attitudes to the following changed over the past ten years?

a work
b relationships
c family
d happiness
e the future
f growing old

[3] Choose five major inventions or events of the twentieth century. How has life been different since they were invented?

[4] Write or act out three conversations with a friend in which you are telling him or her about three of the situations below:

1 how an acquaintance of yours became more and more dependent on drugs.
2 how a relationship of yours grew and grew and then went sour.
3 how a car of yours went from being your pride and joy to a heap of useless metal.
4 how your children went from being babies to secondary school pupils.
5 how you went from beginner level to advanced in English.
6 your ambition to reach the top in the company you’ve just started working for.

[5] Write a passage from your political speech, in which you describe the state of the nation eight years ago, the events of the past eight years, the situation now and prospects for the future.
Write a paragraph from your latest novel, in which the heroine remembers autumn and looks forward to the spring. She's probably sitting looking out of the window, isn't she?

Add here any other words about time that you may meet.
Numerals and proportions

Reading

Read the dialogue below, paying attention to the words and expressions that refer to part, but not all, of something.

A Well, how did the meeting go?
B The meeting?
A Yes, the voting meeting.
B Oh, that meeting!
A Mm. Full attendance, was there?
B Yes, there was. **100 per cent turnout** and not one empty seat.
A Good. **What proportion** of them voted for me? **All of them?**
B No.
A Oh, a few went over to the other side, did they? Yes, you always get these little **splinter groups, exceptions to the rule**, people who want to be different from the masses. Still, an **overwhelming majority** for me, I suppose?
B Not really, no.
A Oh dear. Still, no doubt I got **the bulk** of the votes. What did they call the majority? **Large?**
B No.
A **Substantial?**
B No.
A It was closer than I expected. Only a **small majority** for me, then?
B Actually, no.
A Good Heavens! **Half and half**, was it? **Equally divided? Equal shares** of the votes? **50-50 split?** Incredible!
B No.
A You mean I didn't get elected? That's amazing! Oh well, I suppose I got a very **large minority? A reasonable percentage** of the votes?
B Not exactly that, no.
A Only a **small number, eh? A small but loyal section. A fraction of** the total but a **significant** fraction. It's a **partial success**, isn't it?
B They were **in complete agreement**.
A Complete agreement?
B They were **unanimous**.
A **The entire group?**
B **Every single one.**
A **The total population** of the school?
B **Each and every one.**
A But I got the **odd one or two** votes, surely?
B No.
A A **fair number of** abstentions, though. **Several** protest votes registered.
B **Not one.**
A **None?**
B **Zero.**
A You mean **nobody...?**
B **No-one.**
A **Not anybody?**
B **Not a soul.**
A Funny. I thought everybody liked me.
Practice

1 Which word or phrase is missing in each of the sequences below? Complete and continue each sequence.

1 one two three four five six seven nine ten
2 first second third fourth sixth
3 once three times four times five times
4 one a half a third a fifth
5 solo trio quartet quintet
6 a baby twins quad(ruplet)s quin(tuplet)s
7 think of a number double it quadruple it
8 a double whisky a triple (or treble) whisky

Now see how quickly you can find the answer to this rather long sum. The answer is at the back of the book.

Four add two, divide by three, subtract one, multiply by eight, take away four, times three, plus two, minus four, halved, equals what?

Of all these numbers, 0 presents the most linguistic problems. Try to read out loud the following expressions including various words for the figure 0. Then work out the answer to questions 9 and 10. Look up the answers in the answer Key if you find this exercise difficult.

Manchester City 0, Manchester United 0
5,4,3,2,1,0! 
0.1% of the air
Tel. 01 906 3002

4 + 2 - 6 = 0
6 - 0, 6 - 1, 6 - 0
8 the temperature is below 0°
9 What's left from £40 if you deduct four amounts of £5 and five sums of £4?
10 How many fingers have you got on your feet?

4 Now think about the number 2. Read the text. How much of the language would change if Daniel found himself a third girlfriend?

Well, take my friend, Daniel. He has two girlfriends. He likes both of them and they both like him. He plays tennis - mixed doubles - with one of them, and goes pairs-skating with the other one. They look very much like each other; the one could be the other's double. Obviously, he can't marry both of them but he could, he thinks, be happy with either of them. Unfortunately, neither of them knows about the other girl in his life. So far he hasn't proposed to either of them. I don't think he wants to be part of a married couple yet, anyway. Almost as a protest, he hasn't even got a matching pair of socks.

For further practice of expressions describing numbers, give an example of each item below.

1 an odd number 2 a three-figure sum 3 three consecutive numbers 4 a multiple of 49 5 an even number 6 a fraction 7 a number with 5 digits after the decimal point 8 an equation
Numerals and proportions

There are several prefixes which indicate number in English. Try to find a word in the right-hand column which matches each definition 1—21.

1 being able to speak two languages very well
2 a period of ten years
3 a creature with about a hundred legs
4 a child’s three-wheeled vehicle
5 half a pair of glasses
6 to copy a document
7 one thousand watts
8 a tenth of a centimetre
9 the process of making a country completely one
10 describing a decision that had 100% support
11 a very large number of people as a crowd
12 the state of having rather a lot of husbands or wives at once
13 a system in which the only digits used are 1 and 0
14 describing a system like: 12 inches in 1 foot
15 the 0 in a road consisting of two parts with traffic going in one direction only
16 half-yearly
17 a group of eight musicians
18 one-sided, the sort of nuclear disarmament that pacifists would be happy with
19 a longish passage spoken by one person
20 a more romantic speech

There has been a survey of 300 people of both sexes and all ages in your town, in which they were asked the following questions. How do you think they responded? Remember how many ways you know of expressing proportions! If you are working in a group, then conduct a survey of your own and report your findings back to the group.

a What do you usually do in the evenings?
b What would you do with £100,000?
c Who is your favourite show business personality?
d Do you like Shakespeare?
e Which country would you emigrate to if you had to leave this one?
f Do you wish you had been born the other sex?

Have numbers any special associations for you? Have you got a lucky one? An unlucky one? What are some of the beliefs and superstitions about numbers in your country? Write a short paragraph answering these questions.

Add here any other words or expressions about numbers that you may come across.
Rise and fall

Reading

Notice all the nouns here describing change in quantity and quality. When you have read the text, try to make similar comments about education in your country using the verbs given on the next page. Some of these verbs will be happy to operate intransitively; some will prefer a passive construction.

Twenty Years of British Education

We have seen:
- a dramatic increase in the number of comprehensive schools
- a steady decrease in the number of privately-owned secondary schools
- a constant rise in the number of university students
- a sharp fall in the number of foreign students at universities
- a general improvement in teaching standards
- a deterioration in pupil-teacher relationships
- the growth of pupil-power
- a decline in discipline
- the strengthening of parent-teacher organisations
- the weakening of teachers' authority
- a tightening up on hygiene and safety regulations
- a relaxation in terms of pupils' and teachers' dress
- the raising of minimum standards and qualifications for prospective careers
- the lowering of the school starting age
- the build-up of technical and scientific departments
- the running-down of history and geography departments
- the expansion of sociology faculties
- the contraction of modern language facilities
- the extension of day-release schemes from factories and offices
- the shrinking of Classics departments
- a widening of the gap between Further Education and Higher Education
- a narrowing of the gap between polytechnic colleges and universities
- the introduction of Sixth Form Colleges
- the phasing out of the eleven-plus examination
- the establishment of post-school opportunities schemes
- a reduction in the number of post-school jobs
- the enlargement of physical education equipment and facilities
- cuts in amenities like free milk and school dinners
- marked progress in the development of specialised skills
- a drop in ability level relating to traditional skills
- the opening of many new nursery schools
- the closure of numerous primary and preparatory schools
- a broadening of pupils' political awareness
- a lessening of interest in the arts
- an upward trend in terms of physics, chemistry, biology and engineering
- a downward trend in terms of religious instruction and literature
- and countless changes - for the better and for the worse - in terms of examinations, mathematics subjects - arithmetic, algebra, geometry etc. - degree courses, remedial studies for slow learners, streaming, corporal punishment, correspondence courses, adult education.
Verbs

increase decrease
rise fall improve drop
deteriorate grow relax raise
expand contract decline strengthen
weaken tighten up lower build up run down
extend widen narrow introduce establish close
open phase out reduce enlarge cut shrink progress
broaden lessen change

Practice

Discuss or write the answers to these questions.

1 What do you feel were / have been the good and bad aspects of your own education?
2 What changes have you seen / did you see while at school yourself?
3 What significant changes have there been over the past twenty years in these areas
   a work and jobs?
   b love and marriage?
   c transport and communications?
   d entertainment?
   e crime?

Write an elderly person's letter to a newspaper regretting the drop in moral standards he or she has witnessed in his or her lifetime.

Add here any other similar words that you may meet.
Answer this questionnaire to see how young (or old) at heart you are. And note the expressions it contains relating to frequency / infrequency, normality / abnormality.

Cover the column on the right. Choose one answer to each question.

**Are you middle-aged?**

1. **How often** do you worry about money?
   - daily, hourly or constantly 3
   - from time to time, once in a while 2
   - seldom or never 1

2. **Do you tend to**
   - write short notes to friends? 2
   - write exceptionally long letters? 1
   - forget to write? 3

3. **How frequently** do you find yourself saying: ‘They don’t write songs like they used to’?
   - every now and then 2
   - regularly 3
   - never 1

4. **Are you inclined to** think that teenagers having green, orange or purple hair is
   - perfectly normal, nothing out of the ordinary? 1
   - inexplicable, beyond belief, really weird? 3
   - slightly odd, a bit peculiar, rather strange? 2

5. How often does it cross your mind that thirteen- and fourteen-year-olds should have the right to vote?
   - occasionally, but generally not for long 2
   - hardly ever 3
   - repeatedly, and usually for long periods 1

6. **Are you apt to** give dinner parties?
   - once in a blue moon 1
   - on special occasions 2
   - as a regular habit, normally on Fridays and Saturdays 3

7. **How regularly** do you watch the mid-evening News on TV?
   - without fail 3
   - more often than not 2
   - rarely 1

8. **How common** is it for you to ask your partner if she/he can see any ‘new’ grey hairs on your head?
   - unheard of 1
   - not that common 2
   - a daily event that’s taken for granted 3

**Now** count up the numbers (on the right) that you scored. What’s your total? Read the next page to see what your score tells you.
Normality and regularity

If you scored:
10 or under: You have no worries; you're young, still a baby.
11 to 16: You're pretty reasonable about the whole thing but you show occasional slight signs of ageing before your time.
17 to 22: An average score, but you really ought to stop worrying. Enjoy yourself while you can.
23 or over: You're showing the standard symptoms of middle-age; whether you're four, fourteen or twenty-four, you certainly think like a forty-year old. Oh dear!

Practice

Note down or tell a partner about ways in which you consider yourself to be:
a average and normal.
b unusual and rather eccentric.

Discuss with a partner or in writing whether it is boring to be normal.

Find out from your partners whether you are significantly different concerning the frequency with which you do each of the following.
1 visit your dentist
2 see your parents
3 get very depressed
4 go to the bank
5 feel ashamed of yourself
6 cry

Write a questionnaire similar to the one in this unit to focus on one of the following topics.
1 whether the reader loves their partner or not
2 whether the reader will be rich one day
3 whether the reader is a good person to have as a friend or not

Add here any other words about the normal or the abnormal that you may meet.
Probability, necessity and free will

Reading

[1] Notice the numerous variations on must and needn't in the following scene. Guess what they are talking about.

Mother We're not going to force you, Luigi.
Father Nobody's going to compel you to do it. Are we boys?
All No. No. Of course not. No way.
Brother No-one's going to make you do anything you don't want to.
Other Brother Right. You tell him, dad.
Cousin You make up your own mind.
Uncle The choice is yours.
Other Uncle It's your decision.
Mother It's up to you.
MI Right.
Brother You don't have to do it if you'd rather not.
Other Brother There's no need to do it if you'd prefer not to.
Father You're under no obligation at all.
Other Uncle It's a free country.
Uncle A man's allowed to change his mind, isn't he?
Brother Sure. Breach of promise is not prohibited by law any more, is it?
Father Oh no, not forbidden by law. On no.
Mother No, the law can't stop you doing whatever you like.
Other Brother That's right. The law permits you to do as you see fit...
Cousin To do what you feel your duty is ...
Uncle As your conscience dictates.
Mother So you please yourself.
Uncle After all, you've got an option.
Father You've got a clear alternative.
Luigi I have?
All Why yes. Sure. Of course. You bet you have.
Luigi And if I don't?
Grandfather We'll kill you.

[2] This is the way job advertisements used to look.

PACKERS / SORTERS / SHELF-FILLERS WANTED
Owing to a shortage of staff in our Liverpool branch following recent mergers, we are looking for:
10 packers
15 shelf-fillers
20 sorters
Previous experience desirable, but not necessary.
Lack of qualifications not necessarily a disadvantage.
References optional.
Applicants should be in good health.
Good salaries and prospects.
Apply: J. Mills and Son, Mersey Street, Liverpool 4.
Probability, necessity and free will

How long will it be before we read adverts like this in our newspapers?

VACANCY OF XTJB/25 TYPE - LONDON

TLB pic are in urgent need of a button-pusher for their new AXK mobile hypermarket complex.
Minimum 10 years' experience with buttons vital.
M.Sc., Ph.D. plus two other post-graduate qualifications essential, preferably 1st Class.
15 good references indispensable.
Applications must be accompanied by a 10,000-word thesis on a subject of candidate's choice.
The successful candidate will be required to attend work between the hours of 09.00 and 09.10 and again between 17.55 and 18.00 two days a week.
He or she will have to write up full reports on each pushing.
Participation in in-service training schemes is compulsory, attendance at all lectures and seminars obligatory.
This position is restricted to those in the 35 to 38 age-group; voluntary redundancy may be taken at the age of 40, when the worker appointed will be able to draw a full pension - type Y2a.
Deadline for applications: 31.12.01

[4] Finally, read this extract from the British news and note some of the degrees of probability it deals with.

'Good morning, and here is the 8 o'clock news, here on Radio Sunshine, for today, April 1st.

Hopes were fading last night of a peaceful settlement of the border dispute between North and South Wales. A long, bitter struggle now looks inevitable after the predictable breakdown of yesterday's talks.

Fears are growing for the lives of the fifteen people whose boat capsized and sank off the Isle of Wight early yesterday morning. A diver at the scene said: 'There's really not the remotest chance of any of them being found alive now'. The accident was almost certainly caused by the unexpected change in weather conditions at that time and may have happened as close as twenty metres from the shore.

The safety of the 250 passengers hijacked late yesterday afternoon was still in the balance last night. The ten billion dollars had definitely not been paid by the midnight deadline, and it seems unlikely that it will be in the foreseeable future. What the hijackers' next move will be is anybody's guess.

Prospects of an end to the three-month-old strike of Public Service Employees still look slim. A union spokesman is quoted as saying: 'There's no possibility of any progress while the Government remain so stubborn. There's no way we'll accept two and a half per cent'. A Government Minister commented: 'An increased offer is absolutely out of the question, certainly this year and most likely for some years to come.'

It looks as if unemployment figures, interest rates and inflation are all certain to continue rising. Cabinet Ministers now admit there is very little likelihood of any improvement before the end of the decade. Meanwhile BP have announced that in all probability they will be forced to put up their petrol prices by 15% from next month. It is thought that their competitors are bound to follow suit. A further increase before the end of the year has not been ruled out, while heavier taxation on petrol is still very much on the cards.
Probability, necessity and free will

Sport, and the eight-day cricket match between Canton Bern and Canton Zurich seems set to be a draw. After three days of heavy snow, it is extremely doubtful whether either side can force a result.

And finally, the weather: - today is sure to be wet and windy again; some areas might have thunderstorms and there could be some snow in the north. However, there is a distinct possibility that the sun will break through in some parts at tea-time, for a short period.

The time is five past eight. And now over to ...

Practice

[1] In what ways do you think the next few decades will bring the following to each individual?
   a less freedom
   b greater freedom

[2] What do you think is the most likely future for each of the following items?
   a the Olympic Games
   b nuclear arms
   c marriage
   d books
   e the Aids virus
   f the ozone layer
   g the whale
   h space exploration

[3] Write a letter to your local council complaining about the inconvenience you had to put up with while your road was dug up for new water pipes to be laid — and again for them to be laid properly — and for a third time while they were laid in the right place.

Add here any other words about the concepts discussed in this unit that you may come across.
Cause and effect

Reading 1

Notice some of the ways in which the following single sentence can be added to and commented on.

I'm going to continue with my English,

because I like the language.
because of this book.
owing to its importance in the world of business.
on account of what my teachers have told me.
in case I need it one day.
in order to take Proficiency next year.
so as not to forget what I've learnt.
so that I can work in the States one day.
whether you think it's a good idea or not.
wherever I go.
whatever happens.
whichever country I go to next.
however difficult the next stage is.
regardless of my slow progress so far.
even if I have to give up all my other interests.
whenever I can.
if it's possible.
providing I can find a teacher.
provided that someone agrees to teach me.
unless you persuade me that Chinese is more useful.
although I know I'm not the most gifted linguist.
even though I'm a very busy person.
in spite of the cost of these lessons.
despite what you've said about my slow progress.
but I think I'll give up Russian.
whereas everyone else in the class is giving up.
unlike the others, who are stopping.
as opposed to my Japanese.
so you'll see me again next term.
which is a bit silly, I suppose.
considering I live on a desert island.

Practice

What do you think of English now? Which of these statements apply to you? (Notice how cause and effect are expressed.)

1 A lot of my problems stem from trying to translate from my language.
2 My hesitation in speech is caused by a lack of vocabulary.
3 Some basic errors can be traced back to the way I learnt English at the beginning.
4 My large vocabulary is a direct consequence of knowing two other European languages.
5 Most of my problems have their roots in grammatical uncertainty.
6 Studying vocabulary has led to a better understanding of how English works.
7 More vocabulary means more fluency.
8 Learning a lot of words can result in confusion.
Reading 2

Notice, in this final and more difficult section, how a sentence can be added to, strengthened or balanced.

The illogical nature of much of English grammar makes it an unfortunate choice as a world language, let alone the leading one.

Consequently, many non-native speakers resent having English forced upon them. All possible attempts should be made, therefore, to further the cause of Esperanto. For this reason, we should all try to ensure that French is not lost as an international language.

In spite of this - or because of it, perhaps - English has been the vehicle for much of the world's greatest literature. It does, however, prove to be a relatively easy language for most people to learn, at least in the early stages.

On the other hand, no other language can boast the richness and versatility that English has acquired over the centuries. Furthermore, its vocabulary is impossibly imprecise, its preposition usage totally ridiculous, not to mention the absurdity of its spelling rules.

Moreover, it has lost so much of its charm over the past few decades that it no longer represents a satisfying subject for study. What is more, the language has diversified into so many forms that most English speakers the world over would have difficulty in understanding each other. Besides, who really wants a world language anyway? In fact, who needs language?

- From now on, you will no doubt meet other ways of connecting two ideas. Make a note of them with examples below.
apart, standing feet 72
apartment 21
ape family 82
aperitif 176
apogetic 58
apologue 58
apology 58
apalling state 124
appeal 185
appeal to 47
appearance, physical 35
appendicitis 150
appendix 33
appliance 65
applause 96
apply 74
apprehended 185
approach 44, 154
approach from 22
approach middle age 10
approve of, strongly 43
approximately forty km from 21
apricot 87
April 193
apron 109
apt to 201
Arabia, Saudi 18
Arabian, Saudi 18
archive 21
archbishop 143
arched back 72
archery 158
architect 140
architecture, Gothic 171
Arctic Circle 21
area 22, 111
area, holiday resort 22
area, total 78
area, penalty 154
areas, forest 78
areas, urban 78
Argentina 17
Argentinian 17
argue with 56
arise 130
arithmetic 199
ark 104
arm 69, 107
arm, give one's right arm for 47
armchair 95
armed thief 185
armour, suit of 108
armpit 29
arms folded 72
arms outstretched 72
arms, metal 125
army, enough to feed an 110
around midnight 194
around teaime 194
arpegglo 170
arrangement 170
arrangement, make an 178
arrest, cardiac 150
arrested 185
arrogance 41
arrogant 39
arrow 155
arson 186
art gallery 171
art, abstract 171
art, Byzantine 171
art, pop 171
art, visual 171
artery 33
arthritis 150
artichoke 87
article of clothing 108
arts 199
arts, music and the 168-172
as 110
as black as one is painted 120
as blind as a bat 37
as dead as a dodo 83
as far as I'm concerned 44
as fit as a fiddle 149
as good as new 149
as opposed to 206
as red as a beetroot 63, 120
as right as rain 149
as square as one is tall, be 25
as the crow flies 23
as things stand 191
as you go in 24
asbestos 118
ash 80
ash-blonde 26
ashes 138
ashes, rise from the 127
ashore, put 179
Asia 21
Asia, South-East 78
aside, an 159
ask me, if you 44
asked for, all I've ever 47
asleep, fast 72
asparagus 87
asparagus soup 174
asphyxiated 137
ass 83
assassin 137
assassinate, to 137
assassination 137
assault, to 185
assistant 144
assistant, shop 141
assure 56
asteroid 77
asthma 150-151
astonished 51
astride a chair, sit 72
astrologer 77
astronomer 77
astronomical 110
at a quarter to six 194
at about midday 194
at about nine 194
at an angle of 114
at any moment 192
at any second 149
at closing time 194
at least 207
at length 56
at nightfall 194
at one end 125
at present 191
at the age of 10
at the correct time, set 193
at the end of 192
at the far end of the street 23
at the foot of 22
at the front 23
at the moment 192
at the present time 191
at the southern tip of 22
at the top 23, 114
at the turn of the century 191
at the wheel of one's car 137
at this moment in time 191
at this point in history 191
at this very moment 192
atheist 44
athlete's foot 151
athlete, talented 157
athletic event 155
atlas 18
attack of, suffer a mild 149
attack, heart 150
attendance, full 196
attention, drive without due care and 186
attic 23
attitude towards 43
attitudes and beliefs 43-45
attitudes and relationships 53-55
attracted to 48
attractive 188
attractively 94
attributes, physical 35
auburn 26
audible 36
audience 159, 161
August 193
aunt 13
aunt, great 14
Australia 19
Australian 19
Austria 17
Austrian 17
authority, teachers' 199
automation 181
autopsy 138
autumn 193
auxiliary junior 144
auxiliary, nursing 141
avalanche 130
avenue 21
average height, above 25
average height, below 25
average speed 111
award a decree nisi 136
balcony, out on to the 23
bald 26
balding, be 26
ball 125
ball, golf 125
ballad 169
ballet lesson 165
balloon, hot-air 105
ban from driving 187
ban, to 156
banana 87
band 109, 161
band, brass 169
bandage, take off a 152
bang 132
bang one's head 28
bang, a sort of 132
banjo 169
bank charges 146
bank manager 148
bank of the river 78
bank of the river, down the west 22
bank statement 147
bankrupt 147
bar 125, 154, 170
bar of, a 112
bar, lounge 176
bar, public 176
bar, saloon 176
barbiturate 151
bare boards 94
barefoot 108
bargain 147
barge 104
baritone 169
bark 65, 81
bark, to 85
barley 88
barman 141
barometer 98
Baroque age 171
barracks 91
barrel 112
barrel, built like a 25
barrister 140, 186
base 114, 125, 173
baseball 158
baseline 114, 155
basement 23
basic salary 146
basin 94
basin, river 78
basket 157
basket, picnic 99
basket-weaving 166
bass 169
bass clef 170
bass drum 168
bass guitar 168
bass, double 168
bassoon 168
baste, to 175
bat 83, 154
bat, as blind as a 37
bath 94
bath, blood 138
bathed in sunshine 127
bathing costume 107
bathroom 23, 94
bathroom, master 95
bathroom, second 94
batter, pancake 173
battered 123
battery 102
battery, top up the 179
bay leaf 89
bay, to 85
be 109
be as old as you feel 11
be coming up to 11
be on one's toes 31
beach 22
beak 86
beam 154
beam 128
bean 87
bear 82
bear in mind 46
bear right 22
bear, koala 83
bear, polar 82
bear, teddy 163
beard 27
beat 74, 170
beat faster, one's heart begins to 69
beat inflation 147
beat the count 154
beat, heart miss a 62
beat, to 175
beaten 123
beaten finalist 156
beaten, well 156
beautiful 188, 190
beauty spot 27
beaver 83
because 206
because of 206-207
beckon to 68
bed and breakfast 179
bed, bunk 95
bed, double 95
bed, single 95
bed-sitter 23
bed-sitting room 23, 91
bed-spread 96
bedroom 23, 94
bedroom, master 23
bedroomed 111
beds, make the 74
beds, twin 95
bee 82
beech 80
beef, fillet of 88
beef, joint of 87
beef, stewing 87
beefsteak 87
beetle 82
beetroot 87
beetroot, as red as a 63, 120
before 191
before dawn 193
before last, the Friday 192
before last, the year 192
before long 192
before sunrise 193
before too long 193
beforehand 194
beg 59
begins to wander, one's mind 46
behead, 137
behind one's back, hands 71
behind the door 24
beige 119
being, for the time 191
Belgian 19
Belgium 19
belief, beyond 201
beliefs, attitudes and 43-45
believe in 44
believe it or not 62
believe one's eyes 62
believer in 43
bell 102, 154
bells, wedding 15
belly, fat 32
below average height 25
below sea-level 78
below, just 22
belt, chastity 108
belt, coastal 78
bench, substitutes' 156
bend in the road, on a 23
bend, a 154
bend, to 129
benefit 148
benefit scheme, sickness 142
benefit, unemployment 146
benefits, social security 181
bent 123
bent, knees 71
beret 109
Berlin, West 78
berserk, go 62
beside a lake 22
besides 207
best man 136
best of, the 111
bet 166
bet on, to 166
better place, go to a 137
better, for the 199
better, no 149
better, old enough to know 11
between ... and ... 191
between the wars 191
between, mid-way 21
beverage 176
bewildered 51
beyond 78
beyond belief 201
biannual 198
biceps 29
bicycle 163
bid 94
big as, as 110
big toe 31
big-headed 34
bigamy 186
bikini 107
bilingual 198
bill 147
bill, quarterly 146
billiards 158
billow, to 127
bin, litter 99
bin, pedal 99
bin, rubbish 99
binary 198
bingo 166
binoculars 98
biology 199
birch, silver 81
bird 82-83
bird of prey 83
bird, wading 83
birth, date of 10
birthday 11
birthday, four next 10
birthmark 27
births, marriages and deaths 134-139
biscuit 173
bisect 114
bishop 143, 154
bison 82
bit off-colour, a 149
bit peculiar, a 201
bitch 84
bite one's head off 65
bite one's lip 68
bite, to 82
biting wind 50
bits and pieces 125
bitter 51, 176
black and blue 119
black and white, in 120
black as one is painted, as 120
black comedy 120
black eye 28
black hair, thick 26
black look 120
black market 120
black pepper 89
black sheep 120
black, in the 182
black, jet 119
black, pitch 119
blackberry 87
blackbird 82
blackboard 95
blackleg 120
blacklist 120
blackmail 186
bladder 33
blame 60
blank, one's mind is 46
blanket 96
blazer 109
bleacher 141
bleak 189
bleat, to 85
bleeding 152
blend, to 175
blind 96
blind as a bat, as 37
blind, colour 37
blind, go 37
blink 62,68
block 112
block up 94
block country, Eastern 78
block, tower 23
blocked 122
blocked-up nose 28
blocks away from 23
blonde 26
bloodbath 138
blood pressure 134, 151
blood pressure goes up 69
blood pressure, high 150
blood relatives 13
blood transfusion 152
blood vessel 150
blood, blue 120
blood, pig's 88
blood clot 150
blood poisoning 134
blood test 134
bloodshot eyes 28
bloody 34
bloom, in 80
blossom 80
blouse 107
blow 69
blow a kiss 68
blow dry 26
blow one's nose 27, 66
blow one's top 62
blow the whistle 68
blow, to 169
blue 120
blue blood 120
blue moon, once in a 120, 201
blue movie 120, 160
blue tit 82
blue with cold 120
blue, black and 119
blue, deep 119
blue, navy 119
blue, out of the 120
blue, pale 119
blue, royal 119
blue, sky 119
blue, steel 119
blue-collar worker 120, 141, 182
bluebell 81
blues 169
blunt 122-123
blurt out 56
blush 63
boa constrictor 82
Board 142, 154-155
board, across the 182
board, chopping 97
board, draining 97
board, full 142,179
board, ironing 97
board, to 178
board game 165
boarding card 178
boarding house 91
boardroom 182
boards, bare 94
boast 60
boastful 39
boat 155, 178
boat, fishing 104
boater 108
body 26, 138
body language, gesture, mannerism 67-70
body, compound adjectives about the 34-35
bodywork 101
boil 27
boil, bring to the 174
boil, to 130,175
boiled 173
boiler 94
Bolivian 17
Bolivia 17
bolt 97
bomb 127
bone, chipped 151
bone, collar 1
bone, set a 152
bone, to 174
bones, all skin and 25
bones, feel it in one's 37
bongo 168
bonnet 101, 109, 180
bonnet up 179
bonus scheme, incentive 142
bonus, productivity 146
boo 65
book 112
bookcase 94, 99
bookmaker 140
boom 182
boost investment 181
boot 101, 125,155
boots, tie 107
border 17, 21
border from, over the 21
bored 50
bored stiff 54
boring 188
borrowing 182
both 197
bottle 112, 176
bottle green 119
bottle, sterilise a 152
bottle, to 173
bottle-fed 182
bottled Guinness 176
bottler 141
bottom 32
bottom down, from the 31
boulevard 21
bust 32
but 206
butcher 141
butcher's 93
butt into 56
butterfly 82, 155
button 109, 125
buy in bulk 147
buying 182
buzz, to 85
by the name of 8
by air 22
by car 21
by first light 193
by mid-afternoon 194
by one's first marriage 15
by plane 22
by road 23
by sea 22
by ship 22
by taxi, twenty minutes 23
by the age of 10
by the end of 192
by the sea 78
by the time 192
by train 22
bypass 179-180
Byzantine art 171

C

c.c. 111

cabbage 87
cabin 91, 104, 179
cabinet, cocktail 95
cactus 81
caddy 144
cadet 142
Caesarian operation 135
cafe, transport 178
cage 84
cake 173
calcium 116
calf 31, 84
calf's foot 88
calf's heart 88
calf's liver 88
call someone names 62
call, curtain 159
call out 65
called, be 8
calm 40, 51, 115
calving 183
camel 82
camera 165
cameraman 161
camping 166
can 112
can be reached by, it 22
can't help laughing 63
can't stand 44
can't wait to 48
can, oil 99
can, petrol 99
can, watering 99
Canada 18
Canadian 18
canal 22
canals, network of 78
canasta 165
cancer 137, 150
Cancer, the Tropic of 78
cancer, lung 150
candid 39
candidate 145
candlestick 99
canner 141
cannot get through 54
cannot stand 53
canoe 104
canoing 166
canon 143
cantata 169
canteen 91, 142
cap 109, 155
capital 18
capital equipment 182
capital punishment 137, 186
captain 143, 179
captain, group 143
captivated 54
car 166, 178
car chase 180
car, at the wheel of one's 137
car, buffet 103, 178, 180
car, by 21
car, invalid 104
car, police 103
car, racing 103
car, restaurant 103
car, saloon 104
car, sports 103
car-driver 180
carat 111
caravan 91, 103
carbon 116
carbon dioxide 80, 116
carburettor 102
card game 165
card, boarding 178
cardboard 118
cardiac arrest 150
cardigan 109
cardinal 143
cards, on the 204
care 43, 45
care and attention, drive without due 186
career, prospective 199
career, theatrical 159
carefree 39
caress 69
caretaker 141
carnation 81
carnival 161
carol 169
carpenter 140
carpentry 166
carpet sweeper 97
carpet, fitted 94
carpet, red 120
carriage 103
carriageway 198
carrier bag 99
carrot 87
carry 74
carry out 94
carry, cash and 93
cart, horse and 104
carton 112
cartoon 160
cartwheel 166
cave, to 175
carving knife 97
cascade, to 128
case 136, 149, 178
case history 149
case, chronic 149
case, dismiss the 187
case, in 206
case, isolated 149
case, pillow 99
cash and carry 93
cash register 98
casserole 173
casserole dish 97
cassette rack 99
cassette recorder 165
cassock 109
cast 159
cast iron 117
castanets 169
castle 91
cat 84
cat family 83
cataarrh 150
catch 166
catch a fish 167
catch a glimpse of 68
catch fire 127
catch one's breath 62
catch red-handed 120
catch, to 149
catching 149
catchy 190
category 113
catering 181
catering supervisor 141
caterpillar 84
cathedral 23

cattle 84
cattle feed 88
cauliflower 27, 87
cause and effect 206-207
cause of death 137
causes, natural 137
cayenne pepper 89
cedar 81
celery 87
cell 80, 91

cellar, salt 97
cello 168
cement 116
cemetery 138
centipede 82, 198
central 21
central areas 78
chatter 56
chattering, teeth are 69
cheap rate 147
cheat 164
check 108
check a circuit 165
check, to 165
cheek 26
cheek, scratch one's 28
cheeks, puff out one's 27
cheeky 34
cheep, to 85
cheer 65
cheerful 50
cheese knife 97
cheetah 83
chef 141
chemist 107
chemistry 199
chemistry set 165
check 147
cherry 27, 87
cherry tree 80
chess 158, 165
chest 32
chest of drawers 94
chest out 71
chesty 34
chew 69
chick 84
chicken 88
Chick 174
chicken, roast 174
chickenpox 150
chicory 87
chill, to 175
chilli 89
chimney, sweep the 74
chimpanzee 82
chin 26
chin up 71
chin, graze one's 28
chin, prop up one's 71
China 18, 117
Chinese 18
chip 173
chip a front tooth 28
chip on one's shoulder, have a 53
chips, fish and 174
chipboard 117
chipped 122
chopped bone 151
chips, fish and 173
chiropractor 140
chisel 97
chlorophyl 80
chocolate 119
chocolate, drinking 176
choose 47
choke 101
choke to death 137
cholesterol 150
choose 47
chop up 174
chop, lamb 88
chopping board 97
choral work 169
chord, major 170
chord, minor 170
chorus 159
christen 8
Christian name 8
Christmas 193
chronic case 149
chuckle 63, 66
church 136
church, in 136
chutney 173
cider 176
cigarette lighter 98
cigarette holder 99
cinema industry 160
cinnamon 89
Cinzano 176
Circle, Arctic 21
circuit 154
circuit, check a 165
circulation, poor 150
circus 161
cirrhosis 150
cistern 125
city centre 22
civil action, bring a 186
civil engineer 141
civil marriage 136
civil matter 186
claim 56
clammer 72
clap 65
clapperboard 161
clear 176
clarinet 168
classed, hands 72
class of one's own, in a 156
class passenger, first 178
class, ante-natal 166
class, economy / tourist 178
class, keep-fit 166
classics 199
classic play 159
classical music 169
classical sculpture 171
classics 199
classification of jobs 142
claw 86
clay 116
clean out 74
clean, to 165
cleaner, vacuum 96
clear alternative 203
cover, to 128, 175
cow 84
cowardly 40
crab 82, 88
crack 132
black, kind of 132
rack, to 129, 174
broken 122
crack 132
crack, to 128, 174
crack 122
creak 132
creak 132
creet 132
cream 151
cream-coloured 119
creamed 173
crease 38
cream 119
cruminated 173
creaked 123
creativity 41
creature 82
creature, fabulous 83
credit 182
crew 85
counter 146
credits 160
crash 137
creased 123
crash, plane 137
credit, long-term 182
crash, stock market 182
creditor 160
crash, to 177
credit company 146
crash, to 177
credit long-term 182
credit 182
crash, to 177
crime 188
crime and punishment, law and order 185
crime against society 186
crime doesn't pay 148
crime, to 177
criminal law 186
crime, to 177
critical 39
critical condition 149
critical illness 149
croak 66
croak, to 85
crochet 165
creak 132
croc 165
croc 165
crocodile 83
croissant 83
croissant 83
crook 165
crook 165
crook, to 177
current account 146
crude 75
currant 87
currency 18
currency, foreign 147
currency, foreign 147
current account, deficit on 182
crime 186
crime 186
criminal law 186
crime 186
criminal law 186
damaged 122
damaged, pay 186
dance 167
dance, to 129
dancing, eyes 127
dandilion 81
Danish 19
dark-skinned 34
darkroom 185
darkroom 185
dar 74
darts 166
dash 73
dash of, a 176
dashboard 101
date 15, 87
date of birth 10
date, before 193
day, at the hottest part of the 194
day, at the hottest part of the 194
day, at the hottest part of the 194
day, one 192
day, part of the 193
day, red-letter 120
day, the other 192
day, time of 193
day-dream 46
day-break 193
day close in 193
days, in those 191
days, these 191
dazzling 127
Dett 18
dead 137
dead and gone, when we're 192
dead as a dodo, as 83
dead, completely 189
dead, missing, presumed 137
dead, missing, presumed 137
dead heat 156
deadline 204
defeated as a post 37
deaf, go 37
deal 147
deal cards 165
deal of, a great 110
deal, productivity 142
dealer, scrap metal 140
dealer, antique 93, 140
dean 143
death duties 138
death penalty 137, 187
death, accidental 137
death, burnt to 137
death, cause of 137
death, choke to 137
death, sick to 54
death, stab to 137
death, starve to 138
death, stone to 137
deaths, births, marriages and 134-139
debate with oneself 56
debit 182
debit, direct 146
debt, heavily in 147
debt, run into 147
debt, up to one's ears in 147
decade 198
decades from now 192
decathlon 155
deceased 137
December 193
decibel 111
decide 46
deciduous 81
decimal point 197
decision, come to a 46
decision, it's your 203
decad, on 179
decorated 94
decorator 141
decorator, interior 140
decrease, steady 199
decrease, to 200
decree absolute 136
decree nisi, award a 136
dedicate, to 138
dedicated 40
dependable 119
depth 111
department 113
department, geography 199
department, head of 143
department, history 199
department, technical 199
departure lounge 178, 180
deposit 146
deposit account 146
deposits, mineral 78
deprived 51, 123
depression, manic 150
depression, post-natal 135
depth 111
depot head 143
depot manager 144
derivation 8
dermatitis 151
description 56
desert 78
desert, in the 81
designer, industrial 141
desirable 203
desire 47
desk 95
despairs of 54
desperately to, be 48
despise 43, 54
despite 206
desert 173-174
desert spoon 97
destination 179
destroy 127
destruction 127
deficit on current account 182
definitely 204
deflate to 181
degrading 188
degree 111
degree course 199
degree of latitude 78
dejected 51
derelate, conference 143
delicacy 188
delightful 189
delinquent, juvenile 10
delivery, forceps 135
demagnetise 165
demand 58, 182
demand, final 147
demanding 39
demarcation 142
demonstration 166
den 84
denial 60
denied 185
denim 117
denounce 59
densely populated 78
density 111
dental surgeon 140
dented 123
dentist 140
dentist, student 144
deny 60
department store 93
department, geography 199
department, head of 143
department, history 199
department, technical 199
departure lounge 178, 180
deposit 146
deposit account 146
deposits, mineral 78
depression, manic 150
depression, post-natal 135
depth 111
depot head 143
depot manager 144
derivation 8
dermatitis 151
description 56
desert 78
desert, in the 81
designer, industrial 141
desirable 203
desire 47
desk 95
despairs of 54
desperately to, be 48
despise 43, 54
despite 206
desert 173-174
desert spoon 97
destination 179
destroy 127
destruction 127
detached house 23
detail, in 56
detective 141
detective, store 186
deteriorate 149, 200
deterioration 199
determination of status 142
determined 39
determined to, be 47
detest 54
devaluation 181
develop photos 167
develop, to 165
developed, highly 78
device 96
devoted 40
diagnosis 151
dial 125
dialogue 162
dialogue, dubbed 162
diameter, several feet in 110
diamond 118
diamonds 165
diarrhoea 150
dice 165
dice, to 174
dictate 56
die 80, 137
die down 127
die laughing, nearly 63
die of embarrassment 63
die of hunger 138
die of thirst 138
diet, staple 88
difference, goal 156
differential 142
digit 197
dim 188
dim and distant past, in the 191
dimple 27
dinghy 104
dining room 24
dining-room chair 95
dinner, after 194
dinner, packed 179
dinner, school 199
dinner jacket 108-109
dinosaur 82
dioxide 198
dioxide, carbon 116
dip 74
diphtheria 150
dipstick 98, 102
direct debit 146
direct route, on the 179
direct taxation 182
direction of, in the 22
directly in front of you 24
directly opposite 22
director 142-144, 160-161
director of studies 143
director: funeral 138, 140
dirt 123
disadvantage 203
disagree 43
disappear 73, 127
driver, train 141
driving instructor 140, 180
driving, ban from 187
drizzle 50
drizzle, to 128
dron 69
drop 199
drop a charge 185
dropped 185
drops 151

drown, nearly 153
drown, to 137
drug 135
drug peddling 186
drug, fertility 134
drags, soft 187
dram 168
drum, bass 168
drum, kettle 168
drum, side 168
drumstick 170
dry

dry hair 26
dry martini 176
dry sherry, medium 176
dry up 56
dry, blow 26
dryer 96
dryer, tumble / spin 96
dual 198
dubbed dialogue 162
Dubonnet 176
duchess 143
duck 84, 88
due 135
due care and attention, drive without 186
due west of 21
duet 169
duffel coat 108
duke 143
dull 188
dull ache 151
dummy 163
dungerreus 108
duodecimal 198
duplicate 198
during 191
during the hottest part of the day 194
during the next few 191
dust 74, 122, 173
dustbin 91, 99
duster 96
dustman 141
dustpan 99
Dutch 18
Dutchman 19
duties, death 138
duty 203
duty, import 182
duty, sense of 37
duty-free 176, 179
duvet 95
dye 26
dyer 141
dying for, be 43
dying to, be 48
dysentery 150
dystrophy, muscular 150

E

EEC 182
each and every one 196
each other 197
eagle 83
ear 27
ear specialist 37
ear, a good 36
early today 192
early fifties, in one's 11
early hours, in the 194
early morning 194
early October 193
early sixties, in the 191
earning and spending money 146-148
earnings, basic 146
earring 109
ears in debt, up to one's 147
ears, prick up one's 27
earthquake 78, 130
ease off 50
ease the pain 151
easel 95
easily 51
East German 18
East Germany 18, 78
East, Far 21
East, Middle 21
East, to the 78
eastern 78
Eastern block country 78
easy-going 39
eating and drinking, cooking 173-177
economic crisis 184
economic discussion 181
economic welfare 181
economist 181
economy 181
economy class 178
economy, stabilise / deflate / stimulate the 181
economy-size 147
ecstatic 51
edge, built on the 22
edge, serrated 114
edgy 50
editing 160
education 199
education, adult 199
education, further 141, 199
education, higher 199
Edwardian 109

eel 88
effect, cause and 206-207
effective 190
effects, special 160
efficiency, higher 182
efficient 103
egg 173
eggcups 97
ego-centric 39
Egypt 17
Eire 19
either 197
ejector seat 105
El Salvador 17
elated 51
ebrow 29, 73
elbow one's way 29
elbows on one's thighs, rest one's 72
elder 11
elerly 11
eldest 11
electric fiddle / violin 168
electric fire 94
electric guitar 168
electric kettle 96
electric piano 168
electrical engineer 141
electrician 140
electricity 146, 181
electrocuted 137
electronic engineer 141
electronic goods 181
electronic music 169
elegant 108, 188
elephant 82
elevenses 194
elk 83
elm 80
embark 178
embarrassingly weak 188
embarrassment, die of 63
embrace 70
embroidery 165
emerald 118
emerald green 119
emotional 41
employee 144, 182
employee, output per 181
employer 142
employer, prospective 145
employment 181
employment, full 181
empty 51, 74
empty seat, not one 196
empty-headed 34
emus 82
enamel 117
enchanting 189
encourage 59
encouragement 59
encyclopaedia 18
end of the street, towards the 23
end of, at the 192
end of, by the 192
end, at one 125

Index 221
eyebrow 26
eyebrows, raise one's 27, 67
eyebrows, singe one's 26
eyelash 26
eyelashes, flutter one's 27
eyelid 27
eyes dancing 127
eyes of the law, in the 186
eyes pop out of one's head 62
eyes, bags under the 27
eyes, bloodshot 28
eyes, not believe one's 62
eyesight 36
eyestrain 28
F natural / sharp 170
fabric, silk 108
fabulous 188
fabulous creature 83
face 48, 69, 125
face competition 181
face south 24
face, have guilt written all over one's 63
face, make / pull a 67
face, scald one's 28
facilities 142, 199
facility 199
fact, in 207
factory, dream 160
facts and figures 56
faculty 199
fade 80, 129
fast asleep 72
fast lane 180
fast, fade 149
fasten one's seat-belt 179
fastener 107
faster, one's heart begins to beat 69
fat belly 32
fat on a chip, there's more 25
fatalist 44
fatally wounded 137
father 13
father-in-law 13
fattening-up 184
favourite, hot 156
fear 47-48
fears are growing 204
feather 82, 117
feather, knock someone over with a 62
feather, knock someone over with a 62
feeler 107
feeling 36, 43
feelings 47
fees 146
feel like, not 47
feel one's age 10
feel quite tempted 47
feel sorry 54
feel sorry for 54
feel strongly 43
feel well 149
feel, be as old as you 11
feelers 86
feeling 36, 43
feelings 47
fees 146
feet apart, standing 72
feet in diameter, several 110
feelings 47
feet in the air, with one's 71
feet, cubic 110
feet, on one's 149
feet, over 18,000 78
feet, stand on one's own two 31
female 84
fence 155
fencer 155
fencing 158
fern 80
ferry 104
ferry terminal 22
fertile valley 78
fertility drug 134
fertilize 80
fetch 75
fever, glandular 150
fear, scarlet 150
fear, yellow 150
feverish 151
feverish, feel 149
few generations ago, a 191
few hours, within the next 193
few words, say a 56
few years back, a 192
few years, for the past 191
few, a 110, 196
fewer jobs 182
fewer than, no 110
fiz 108
fibreglass 117
fibrositis 150
fiction movie, science 160
fiddle 68
fiddle, as fit as a 149
fiddle, electric 168
fidget 68
field of fifteen 156
field, recreation 156
field, towards the back of the 156
fields, across the 22
fierce opponent of, a 43
fiercely anti-... 43
fifth 197
fifty-fifty split 196
fig 87
fight for one's life 149
figure 114
family, ape / monkey 82
family, cat 83
family, members of the 13
family, single-parent 14
family, snake 82
family-size 112
fan letter 162
fan of, a great 44
fan belt 102
fanatic 44
fancy, not really 47
Far East 21
far end of the street, at the far side of town, on the far too much 110
far-distant future, in the farce 159
farmer worker, general 141
farming methods 184
farmyard animal 84
fascinated 54
fascinating 188
fashion parade 161
fashionable 107
fast 193
fast asleep 72
fast lane 180
fast, fade 149
fasten one's seat-belt 179
fastener 107
faster, one's heart begins to beat 69
fat belly 32
fat on a chip, there's more 25
fatalist 44
fatally wounded 137
father 13
father-in-law 13
fattening-up 184
favourite, hot 156
fear 47-48
fears are growing 204
feather 82, 117
feather, knock someone over with a 62
feather, knock someone over with a 62
feeler 107
feeling 36, 43
feelings 47
fees 146
feel like, not 47
feel one's age 10
feel quite tempted 47
feel sorry 54
feel sorry for 54
feel strongly 43
feel well 149
feel, be as old as you 11
feelers 86
feeling 36, 43
feelings 47
fees 146
feet apart, standing 72
feet in diameter, several 110
feelings 47
feet in the air, with one's 71
feet, cubic 110
feet, on one's 149
feet, over 18,000 78
feet, stand on one's own two 31
female 84
fence 155
fencer 155
fencing 158
fern 80
ferry 104
ferry terminal 22
fertile valley 78
fertility drug 134
fertilize 80
fetch 75
fever, glandular 150
fear, scarlet 150
fear, yellow 150
feverish 151
feverish, feel 149
few generations ago, a 191
few hours, within the next 193
few words, say a 56
few years back, a 192
few years, for the past 191
few, a 110, 196
fewer jobs 182
fewer than, no 110
fiz 108
fibreglass 117
fibrositis 150
fiction movie, science 160
fiddle 68
fiddle, as fit as a 149
fiddle, electric 168
fidget 68
field of fifteen 156
field, recreation 156
field, towards the back of the 156
fields, across the 22
fierce opponent of, a 43
fiercely anti-... 43
fifth 197
fifty-fifty split 196
fig 87
fight for one's life 149
figure 114
Index

game 88

get a divorce 135

get married 15, 135

get on (in years) 11

get on well 53-54

go deaf 37

go in, as you 24

go mad 62

go off 127, 129

go on in one's head 46

go out with 15

go over and over 46

go stale 122

go steady with 15

go straight on 22

go to a better place 137

go to meet one's Maker 137

go via 22

go white 26

go wrong 55

go of, let 75

go, the car doesn't 122

goal 155

goal difference 156

goal-kick 155

goalkeeper 155

goat 82

goes on, as time 192

goes up, blood pressure 69

goggles 155

go to give it a few more years 48

go to, be 47

gold 116-117

gold and foreign exchange reserves 181

golden 117,119

goldfish bowl 99

golf 158

golf ball 125

gondola 104

gone, when we're dead and 192

good 188

good as new, as 149

good ear 36

good eye 36

good figure 25

good marks 157

good friends, just 15

goods and services 181,18!
goods train 103

goods, electronic 181

goose 82, 84, 88

gooseberry 87

gorgeous 189

gorilla 82

gorse 81

gossip 56

got a leg to stand on, haven't 31

Gothic architecture 171
government administrator, local 141
government expenditure 181
government, local/ national 181
gown 109
gown, dressing 108

GP 153

grab 74
hands with, shake 70
hands, wring one's 68
handy 34
hang 74
hang, to 137, 171
hanger 108
hang-glider 166
hanging by a thread, life is 149
hangover 153
hankie 96
happen 204
happy to, be more than 48
hard of hearing 37
hard up 147
hard winter, long 51
hard-hearted 34
hardboard 117
hardly anything 110
hardly ever 201
hare 83, 88
harmonica 168
harmony 170
harp 168
harpsichord 169
harvesting 184
hat 109
hat stand 99
hatch, to 130
hate 53
hate the sight of 53
have a guilty look in one's eye 63
have a lot in common 53-54
have a heart attack, nearly 53
have a heart attack, nearly have a 53
heart disease 137
heart failure 150
heart miss a beat 62
heart, calf's 88
heart-broken 51
heartbeat 134
heartburn 134
heartland, industrial 22
hearts 165
hearty 34
heat 51, 156
heater 101
heater, convector 94
heater, storage 94
heath 81
heather 81
heating, gas-fired central 94
heaven knows when 193
heaviest 111
heavily in debt 147
heavy storms 50
heavy-handed 188
heavilywight 156
heckle 59
heckler 60
hedgehog 83
hedgerow 80
hedgerow 80
heal 31, 109
heels, be rocked back on one's 31
height, above average 25
height, below average 25
height, new record 154
height, over three meters in 110
height, stretch to one's full 68
her 138
herb 89
herd 84
here and now 192
hernia 150
hero 159
heroin 186
herring 88
hesitant 57
hesitation 57
hessian 94
hi-fi 165
hi-jacking 186
hibernate 82
hiccup 65, 153
hide-and-seek 164
hideous, absolutely 189
high 26
high blood pressure 150
high jump 155
high-speed locomotive 103
higher education 199
higher efficiency 182
highest peak 78
highest point 78
highlands 22, 78
highlight 26
highly contagious 149
highly developed 78
hijacking 186
hiking 166
hill 21
hill, over the 11
hill, up and down the 22
hilly 78
hind legs 86
hinge 125
hint 56
hip 32
hippo(potamus) 82
hire and fire 142
hire-purchase 147
hiss 65, 132
hiss, to 85
historical film 160
history department 199
Index 229

history of 149
history of, be / have 13
history, at this point in 191
history, case 149
hit 69, 75
hit the roof 62
hit, smash 159
hit, to 155
hitch-hike 178
hitch-hiking 180
hive 84
hobbies, games and 163-167
hobble 72
hobby 163
hoe 97
hold 75
hold, to 157
holder 99
hole 84, 107, 123, 125, 154
holiday entitlement 142
holiday resort area 22
holiday, package 178
holiday, touring 178
Holland 18
hollow 26, 115
holy matrimony 136
home, broken 14
home, old people's 91
homicide 137
Honduras 17
honest, to be quite 47
honeymoon 136
honour, in one's 138
hood 109
hoof 86
hook 26, 125, 154, 166
hoo, to 85
hoover 74, 96
hop 72
hope 43, 47, 56
hope a hole would open up in the ground and swallow me 63
hope to 48
hope, ray of 128
hopeful 50
hopeless 188
hopes are fading 204
hopscotch 164
horizontal line 114
horizontally 114
horn 86, 101, 168
horrible 189
horrible, indescribably 188
horribly unnatural 188
horror film 160
horse 83, 154
horse and cart 104
horse, rocking 163
horse-chestnut 81
horse-racing 158
horse-riding 166
hose 98
hospital 23, 181
hospital porter 141
hostage 186
hostel 178
hostile 51
hot 173
hot favourite 156
hot-air balloon 105
hot-blooded 40
hotel manager 141
hotel, four-star 179
hottest part of the day, during the 194
hour, miles per 111
hourly 201
hours of work 142
hours, a couple of 194
hours, in the early 194
hours, twilight 194
hours, unsocial 142
house 23
house, (semi-)detached 23, 91
house, break into a 187
house, guest 91
house, terraced 23
houseboat 104
household gadget 96
household, furniture and 94-100
housemaster 143
housing 181
hovel 91
hoov, to 127
hovercraft 106
how common 201
how frequently 201
how often 201
how regularly 201
however 206
however 206-207
howl 85
howl with laughter 66
HP 147
hug 70
huge 110
hull 104
hum 65, 132
hum, to 85
humble 40
humility 41
humming-bird 83
humour, sense of 37
hump 86
hunched shoulders 72
hundred, a 198
hundred metres, a 155
hundred, live till one is a 149
hundred percent turnout, a 196
Hungarian 18
Hungary 18
hunger, die of 138
hunt 185
hunting 166
hurdles 155
hurl 75
hurricane 130
husband, late 15
hut 91
hutch 84
hyacinth 81
hydrogen 116
hyena 82
hygiene 142, 199
hymn 169
hypermarket 93
hypocrisy 41
hypocrical 40
hysterical 63
hysteric, in 63
ice 117, 176
ice-dance champion, Olympic 157
ice hockey 158
Iceland 18
Icelandic 18
icing sugar 173
icy 51, 117
idea of, like the 48
idea, toy with an 46
ideal 189
idealistic 44
idiotic 190
idle 51
if 206
if you ask me 44
if, even 206
igloo 91
ignition 101
ignorant 188
ignore 53, 60
iguana 83
ill, critically 149
ill, seriously 149
ill, taken 149
illegal 185
illness, health and 149-153
illuminate 128
illustration 56
imagination 41
imaginative 41
imagine 46
imagine, would 43
IMF 181
immediate future, in the 193
immense 110
impatient 41
impetigo 151
impetuous 41
import 182
import control / duty 182
import quota 182
import restriction 182
imports 181
imports, volume of 182
impose 182
impose a fine 187
impressed 54
impression, be under the 43
impressionable 40
Index

Impressionism 171
impressive 189
imprisonment, life 187
improve 200
improvement, general 199
improvements, make 95
improvise 46
impulsive 41
in a bun 26
in a class of one's own 156
in a coma 149
in a couple of 192
in a mess 123
in a sauce 88
in a second or two 192
in a soup 88
in a stew 88
in a world of one's own 46
in a year or two 193
in all probability 204
in an hour's time 192
in another twenty years' time 192
in bloom 80
in case 206
in church 136
in complete agreement 196
in detail 56
in fact 207
in favour of, be 43
in his late forties 11
in his mid-twenties 10
in hysteric 63
in labour 135
in love with 54
in mourning 138
in olden times 191
in one's early fifties 11
in one's honour 138
in one's seventy-fifth year 11
in one's teens 191
in one's view 43
in order to 206
in perfect condition 122
in perfect health 149
in possession of 187
in prehistoric times 191
in rather poor/bad taste 36
in sight 36
in spite of 206-207
in the 1990s 192
in the balance 204
in the black 182
in the centre of 22
in the coming years 192
in the desert 81
in the dim and distant past 191
in the direction of 22
in the distance 23
in the early hours 194
in the early sixties 191
in the eyes of the law 186
in the foreseeable future 204
in the immediate future 193
in the jungle 81
in the late forties 191
in the mid... 191
in the mood for, be 47
in the most northerly part of 22
in the North 78
in the north of 21
in the not too distant future 193
in the red 120, 147, 182
in the shade 111
in the South 78
in the spring of 192
in the valley 22
in the West 78
in those days 191
in time 194
in urgent need of 204
in vogue 107
in width 110
in years to come 192
in-laws 14
incentive bonus scheme 142
inch thick, an 110
inclined to 201
inclined to, feel 48
income 146, 182
income, fixed 143
income, total 146
incomes policy 182
incompatibility 136
incompetent 188
increase, annual wage 142
increase, dramatic 199
increase, low rate of 182
increase, percentage 182
increase, to 200
increase, wage 182
incubator 135
indecisive 40
indescribably horrible 188
index, cost of living 181
index finger 29
Index, Retail Price 142
index-linked 181
India 18
Indian 18
Indian restaurant 23
indicate 178, 180
indicator 101
indifferent 54
indifferent, feel 54
indirect tax 182
indispensable 204
individual medley 157
Indonesia 19
Indonesian 19
input socket, phono 165
inquest 138
insincere 40
insist 44, 57
insist 45
insistent 57
insomnia 134, 151
inspector 143

industrial heartland 22
industrial injury 142
industrial relations 182
industrial relations officer 141
industrialized 78
industry and agriculture, business 181-184
industry and trade 181
industry, capital-intensive 182
industry, cinema 160
industry, key 181
industry, labour-intensive 182
industry, manufacturing 141
industry, nationalised 181
industry, primary 181
industry, production 181
industry, service 141
industry, state-owned 182
inevitable, look 204
inexplicable 201
infect 151
infection, serious 151
infectious 149
inferiority complex 54
inflammation 151
inflation rate, low 181
inflation, beat 147
inflation, conquer 181
inflation, rate of 181
influenza 150
infore 108
infrequency 201
inflated 123
ingredient 89, 174
inhalation 151
inherit 14, 138, 147
inhuman 188
initials 8
injection, give an 152
injury, industrial 142
inland 22, 77
inner tube 102
innocent 185
innumerable 110
inoculated 152
input socket, phono 165
insist 138
insinuate 1
insemination 184
inside and outside the torso 32
inside leg 32
inside out 108
inside the Tropic of Cancer 78
inside, just 24
insincere 40
insist 44, 57
insistent 57
insomnia 134, 151
inspector 143
inspector, insurance 141
inspector, police 141
inspector, public health 141
inspector, tax 141
inspiration, flash of 47
installation 95
instalment, HP 146
instant coffee 176
instep 31
instinct 37
instruction, religious 199
instructor, driving 140, 180
instrument 98, 168, 170
instrumentalist 170
insult 58, 62
insurance contributions, national 146
insurance inspector 141
insurance premium 146
intelligent 188
intend to 48
intensity 111
intention of, have every 47
inter-city express 178
inter-city service 103
interest 146, 163
interest in 199
interest loan, fixed 182
interest, rate of 147
interest, take a keen interest in 43
interior 78, 94
interior decorator 140
interior, deep in the 22
interior-sprung mattress 95
international liquidity 181
International Monetary Fund 181
international transaction 182
interrogate 59
interrogation 59
interrupt 56
intersection 114
intestines 33
into the lead 157
into view 36
intriguing 54
introduce 200
introducing 57
introduction 57, 199
introspective 50
intruder 185
intuition 37
invalid car 104
invent an excuse 46
investment expert 184
investment, boost 181
invisible export 182
invitation 57
inviting 57
Iran 18
Iranian 18
Iraq 18
Iraqi 18
Ireland 19
Ireland, Northern 78
iris 81
Irish 19
Irishman 19
iron 74, 96, 116
ironing board 97
ironmonger's 93
irregular shifts 143
irresponsible 41
irrigation 78
irritable 50
island 78
island, on an 22
islands, main 78
isolated case 149
Israel 17
Israeli 17
issue 44
Italian 17
Italy 17
itch 69
itching, stop the 151
ivy 81
jack 165
jackal 83
jacket 107
jacket potatoe 173
jacket, knitted woollen 107
jacket, military 107
jackplug 165
jaded 123
jagged 115
jam 173
jam, traffic 178, 180
jangle 132
January 193
Japan 18
Japanese 18
jar 112
jaundice 150
javelin 155
jaw 27
jazz, traditional / modern 169
jealous 53
jeans 109
jelly-fish 83
jersey 107
jet airliner 106
jet black hair 26
jet plane 106
jet black 119
Jew's harp 168
jigsaw puzzle 163
jingle 132
job 181, 199
job stability 142
job, regular 143
job, steady 143
jobs, classification of 142
jobs, fewer 182
jog 72
jogging 166
joined, be 114
jumper 107
junction 178
junction, left fork at the 23
June 193
jungle 78
jungle, in the 81
junior minister 143
junior, auxiliary 144
Jupiter 77
jury 185, 187
just a matter of time 149
just a moment ago 192
just a stone's throw from 22
just above 22
just across the road from 23
just below 22
just down from 23
just good friends 15
just inside 24
just now 192
just past 21, 23
juvenile delinquent 10
K
kangaroo 82
kazoo 168
kebab 173
keel 104
keen interest in, take a 43
keen on 44
keen to, be 47
keep a pet 164
keep cool 62
keep in the right lane 179
keep one's distance 53
keep one's eye on 75
keep out of someone's way 53
keep over 178
keep perfect time 193
keep the trophy 156
keep to the minor roads 22
keep to the right 178
joint guilt 186
joint of beef 87
Jordan 18
Jordanian 18
journalist 141
journey, return 179
judge 136, 155, 185
judge's summing up 187
judgement 44
jug, measuring 99
jug, milk 99
jug, water 99
juggernaut 103
juice, whole fruit 176
jukebox 169
July 193
jumble sale 147
jump 73
jump out of one's skin 62
jump, high/long 155-6
jump, make someone 62
jump, triple 155
jumper 107
K
kangaroo 82
kazoo 168
kebab 173
keel 104
keen interest in, take a 43
keen on 44
keen to, be 47
keep a pet 164
keep cool 62
keep in the right lane 179
keep one's distance 53
keep one's eye on 75
keep out of someone's way 53
keep over 178
keep perfect time 193
keep the trophy 156
keep to the minor roads 22
keep to the right 178
keep-fit class 166
kennel 84
Kenya 18
Kenyan 18
kettle drum 168
kettle, electric 96
key 125, 170
key industry 181
keyboards 168
kick 69, 134
kick the bucket 11, 137
kid 10, 84
kidnapping 186
kidney 33
kidney pie, steak and肾 173
kidney, pig's 88
kill 137
killed in action 137
kilometres, square 22
kilowatt 198
kilt 109
kimono 109
kin, next of 13
kind 112
kind of 132
kind-hearted 34
king 143, 154, 165
king-sized 110
kipper 88
kiss 70
kiss, blow a 68
kit 108, 126
kitchen 23, 94
kitchen hand 141
kite 165
kitten 84
kiwi 82
knave 165
knead, to 175
knee 31
knee-high to a grasshopper/ an ant 25
kneel 72
knees bent 71
knees, on one's 31
knickers 107
knife, carving 97
knife, cheese 97
knife, fish 97
knife-thrower 161
knight 154
knit, to 165
knitted woollen jacket 107
knob 125
knock down 137
knock out a tooth 28
knock out 156
knock over 75
knock someone out 69
knock someone over with a leather 62
knock-kneed 34
knot 111
know better, old enough to 11
know one's own mind 43
know what one is thinking, never 53
know where to put oneself, not 63
knowing, thinking, wanting and 46-49
be known as 8
knuckle 29
koala bear 83
Korea, South 18
Korea, South / North 78
Korean, South 18
LP 169
label 109, 125
label, recording 169
laboratory technician 141
labour force 181
labour practice, restrictive 182
labour ward 135
labour, in 135
labour, induce 134
labour, manual 181
labour, semi-skilled / unskilled 182
labour, skilled 182
laborador 83
lace 109, 117, 125
lack of 203
Ladders, Snakes and 165
ladle 97
ladybird 82
ladylike 188
lager 176
lair 84
lake 78
lake, beside a 22
lamb 84
lamb chop 88
lamb's brain 88
lambing 184
land 78
land, on 80
land, to 154, 179
landing, a few steps along the 23
landing, a few steps along the 23
landing from the bathroom, along the 21
landing from the bathroom, along the 21
landscape 171
landscape, to 95
lane 21
lane, along a country 22
lane, fast 180
lane, keep in the right 179
language, sign 37
lap 32, 111, 155
lapel 109
lard 90
larder 24
large 78, 196
large minority, very 196
large number of 110
large, exceedingly 110
larger than life 162
largish 110
larva 84
laryngitis 150
lasagne 89
last few hours, within the 192
last one in the street 23
last place 156
last thing one wanted, the 47
last week, one afternoon 192
last year, this time 191
last, down to one's 147
last, the Friday before 192
latch 125
late forties, in his 11
late forties, in the late 191
late husband 15
late summer 193
late... until, from the 191
lately 191
later today 193
later, sooner or 192
lathe 98
lathe operator 141
latitude, degree of 78
latitude, line of 21
laugh 66
laugh like a drain 66
laugh one's head off 63
laughable 188
laughing, burst out 63
laughing, can't help 63
laughing, nearly die 63
laughter, howl with 66
launch 104
laundry 99
laurel 81
lavatory 24
lavatory seat 94
lavender 119
law and order, crime and punishment 185-187
law, against the 186
law, break the 185
law, criminal 186
law, forbidden by 203
law, in the eyes of the 186
law, point of 185
law, prohibited by 203
lawn 95
lawnmower 96
lay down one's life 137
lay off staff 182
lay-by 179
lazy 51
lead 118, 125, 165
lead guitar 168
lead off to 24
lead on to 94
lead the championship table 154
lead vocals 168
lead, into the 157
lead, to 156
leader, squadron 142
leader, union 143
leading by a metre from, be 157
leading down, steps 23
leading part 159
leading seaman 143
leading up to the house, long drive 23
leaf 80, 125
leaf, bay 89
leak, to 122-123, 128, 130
lean back 72
leap 73, 154
leap year 193
learner driver 180
learner, slow 199
least, at 207
leather 117
leather upholstered 95
leathery 117
leave it at that 56
leave on one's right 23
leave to cool 175
leave unsaid / unspoken 56
Lebanese 17
Lebanon 17
lecture, give someone a 56
lecturer, university 141
leek 87
leer at 67
left at 23
left channel 165
left fork at the junction 23
left, fourth on the 21
left, stage 159
left, third 23
left, to one's 23
left-handed 34
left-over 175
leg 31, 82, 157
leg of pork 88
leg to stand on, haven't got a 31
leg, inside 32
leg, pull someone's 60
legal costs 186
legal right 185
legal separation 185
leggy 34
legs crossed 72
legs dangling 71
legs, hind 86
legs, a hundred 198
lemon 87, 119
lemon, slice of 176
lemonade 176
lending 182
length, a foot in 110
length, at 56
lengthy 110
lens 125
lens, telephoto 165
lenses, wear contact 37
leopard 82
leprosy 150
lessen the risk 151
lessen, to 200
lessening 199
lesson, ballet 165
let 129
let alone 207
let go of something 75
letter, fan 162
lettuce 87
leukaemia 150
level, ability 199
level, spirit 98
level-headed 40
lever 74
Levis 109
levy, to 182
libel 186
Libya 17
lie in ruins 127
lie in state 138
lie on 22, 78
lie on one's stomach 71
lie to the south of 22
lie, to 78
lie-detector 98
Liechtenstein 17
Liechtensteiner 17
lieu, time off in 142
lieutenant 142
lieutenant, flight 142
life imprisonment 187
life is hanging by a thread, one's 149
life, fight for one's 149
life, get the shock of one's 62
life, lay down one's 137
life, lose one's 152
life, save a 152
lifeboat 104
lift 179
lift, take the 23
lift, thumb a 29, 178
light ale 176
light green 119
light opera 159, 169
light year 77
light years from now 192
light, by first 193
light, by the first 193
light-fingered 34
light-headed 51
light-meter 165
lighter, cigarette 98
lights, across the traffic 22
lightship 104
lightweight 156
like a lamp-post 25
like death warmed up 149
like the idea of 48
like the sound of 47
like to see, would 43
like, whatever you 203
like, would quite 47
likelihood, little 204
likely, most 204
lilac 119
lily 81
lime 87, 116
lime-green 119
limit, exceed the speed 187
limit, speed 179
limit, to 182
limp 72
line 27, 114, 166
line of latitude 21
line, base 114
line, horizontal 114
line, overtaken on the 156
line, toe the 31
line, vertical 114
lined 26
lined 117
liner 104
lines 159
linesman 155
lining 125
lino 94
lion 83-84
lion-tamer 161
lioness 84
lions, pride of 84
lip open, split one's 28
lip, swollen 28
lip-read 37
lips 27
lips, bite one's 68
lips, lick one's 67
lips, purse one's 27, 68
lips, smack one's 27
liqueur 176
liquiser 96
liquidity 181
liquidity, international 181
list, off the danger 149
listen to 36
literature 199
litre 110
litter bin 99
little 110
little finger 29
little likelihood 204
little splinter group 196
little, a 147
little, very 110
live till one is a hundred 149
live concert 169
lively 40
liver 33, 150
liver, calf's 88
livid 62
living index, cost of 181
living quarters 91
living room 24
lizard 83
loaf 112
loan 146
Index 233
loan, fixed interest 182
loath 53
lob 155
lobe 155
lobster 83, 88
local government 181
local government administrator 141
located 78
location 21-24
lock, to 122
locomotive, high-speed 103
log-cabin 91
log-shaped 114
logical 40
lonely 51
long 26, 114
long ago, not so 192
long as one can remember, for as 191
long creepers 81
long for 48
long jump 155-156
long tunnel, through a 22
long way round 23
long, before 192
long, before too 193
long hard winter 51
long time ago, a 192
long, quite a long way from 22
long-sighted 37
long-term credit 182
longing, full of 50
longitude 21
loo 24
look after 14, 167
look as if 204
look at 36
look at it, on the right as you 24
look down 54
look down on 54
look for 203
look forward to 48
look inevitable 204
look like 36
look one's age 10
look out on to 24
look slim 204
look up 54
look up to 53
look, black 120
look in one's eye, have a guilty look 63
loose 109
Lord, First Sea 143
lose 129, 156, 193
lose one's life 152
lose one's temper 62
lose one's voice 66
loss 182
loss for words, be at a 56
lost in thought, be 46
lot in common, have a 53
lot of, a 110
lot on one's mind, have a 46
lotion 151
lounge 24
lounge bar 176
lounge suite 95
lounge, departure 178, 180
love with, in 54
love-hate relationship 53
lovely 190
low 122
low inflation rate 181
low rate of increase 182
lower, to 200
lowering 199
lowlands 78
loyal 40
lozenge 151
ludicrous 188
luggage 178
luggage rack 99
lullaby 169
lump come to one's throat 62
lunchtime 194
lung 33
lung cancer 150
Luxembourg 18
Luxembourger 18
M
mph 111
mac 109
macaroni 89
macaroon 173
machine, fruit 166
machine, sewing 96
machine, washing 96
machine, washing-up 96
mackerel 88
mad, go 62
made of money 147
madrigal 169
magistrate 136
magnificent 189
magnus 110
magpie 83
mahogany 117
maiden name 8
mail sorter 141
main dish 174
main islands 78
main road, follow the 22
main road, turn off the 179
mainland 22
maintain 44
maintenance 136
maintenance engineer 140
maintenance money 146
maintenance, motor-cyclist 165
maisonette 23
maize 88
major 143, 170
major chord 170
major station 103
majority, overall 111
majority, overwhelming 196
majority, small 196
make 113
make a choice 47
make a face 67
make a miraculous recovery 149
make a resolution to 48
make a sign 68
make a speech 56
make a total recovery 149
make an arrangement 178
make do with 47
make ends meet 148
make fun 60
make improvements 95
make money 147
make progress 149
make someone jump 62
make staff redundant 182
make the beds 74
make up a story 46
make up one's mind 43, 47, 203
make wine 167
make, to 166, 203
make-believe 46
make-up 159, 161
Mackerel, go to meet one's 137
malaria 150
male 84
malicious 40
malnutrition 138
malt 88
mammoth 82, 110
man, twelfth 144
man-made 117
management 182
manager, bank 148
manager, costumes 159
manager, deputy 144
manager, hotel / club / pub 141
manager, sales 141
manager, stage 159
mandolin 168
mane 86
mangled 123
mango 87
manic depression 150
manned flight 106
manned spacecraft 105
mannerism, gesture, mannerism and body language 67-70
manners, comedy of 159
mansion 21, 91
manslaughter 186
mantlepiece 94
manual labour 181
manufacturing 181
manufacturing industry 141
many years ago 192
maracas 168
marathon 155
marble 117
marbles 164
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mind, change one's</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mind, exaggerate in one's</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mind to, have half a</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mind, know one's own</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mind, make up one's</td>
<td>43, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mind, to my</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mindless</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mineral deposits</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mineral salt</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mineral water</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minimum</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minimum standard</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mining</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minister, junior</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minister, prime</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mink</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minor</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minor chord</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minor road</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minor roads, keep to</td>
<td>the 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minority, very large</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mint</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minus</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minute</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minute, this</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minutes of the meeting</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miraculous recovery, make a</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mirror, wing</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miscarriage</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miserable</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miss</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miss a beat, heart</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>missing, presumed dead</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mistress, former</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mitten</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mix</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mix, to</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mixer</td>
<td>96, 176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mixer tap</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mixing bowl</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mixture</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moan</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mock</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>model</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>model aeroplane</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moderate</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modern</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modern jazz</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modern language</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modern pentathlon</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modest</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modesty</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mole</td>
<td>27, 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moment in time, at this</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moment now, any</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moment, at any</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moment, at the</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moment, at this very</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monastery</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monetarism</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monetary Fund</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money into, pump</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money supply, control of the</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money than sense, more</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money, amount of</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money, counterfeit</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money, danger</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money, dole</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money, made of</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money, maintenance</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money, make</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money, pocket</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money, redundancy</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money, save</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money, stake</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monk</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monkey family</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monocle</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monologue</td>
<td>159, 198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monopoly</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monopoly, natural</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monotonous</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monsoon</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monstrosity</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monthly</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monumental pile of, a</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moods</td>
<td>50-52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moody</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moon, once in a blue</td>
<td>120, 201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moon, over the</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moonlight</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moorland</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mop</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>more money than sense</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>more often than not</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>more than happy to, be</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>more, what is</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moreover</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>morgue</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>morning dress</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>morning, early</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>morning-sickness</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mornings, frosty</td>
<td>50-80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moroccan</td>
<td>18-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multiple</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multiple sclerosis</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multiply, to</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multitude</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mumble</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mumps</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mural</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>murder</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>murder, guilty of</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>murder, to</td>
<td>137, 185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>murmuru</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muscular</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muscular dystrophy</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mushroom</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music, classical</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music, electronic</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music, piece of</td>
<td>169-170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music, read</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music-hall</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motion picture business</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motion, slow</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motion, time and</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motor mechanic</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motor-cycle maintenance</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motorbike</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motorcycle</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motorway</td>
<td>22, 178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mottled</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mountain</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mountain chain</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mountain range</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mountainering</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mountainous</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mountains, coastal</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mourning, in</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moustache</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mousy strands</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouth</td>
<td>27, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouth organ</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouth of, near the</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouth, to</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouthpiece</td>
<td>125, 170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>move</td>
<td>75, 154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>move into</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>move, to</td>
<td>129-130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moved to tears</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movement</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movement, gesture</td>
<td>and 71-73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movie world</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movie, blue</td>
<td>120, 160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movie, disaster</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movie, science fiction</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moving</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much, far too 10</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muddy</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mug</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mugging</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mule</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multi-coloured</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multi-millionaire</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multiple</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multiply</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multitude</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mumble</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mumps</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mural</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>murderer</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>murder</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mumble</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muscular dystrophy</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mushroom</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music and the arts</td>
<td>168-172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music, electronic</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music, piece of</td>
<td>169-170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music, read</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music-hall</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
musical 159
musical box 99, 169
musical chairs 164
musical term 170
musical, Hollywood 160
musician 144, 168
mussel 88
must 203-204
must admit 43
mustard 174
mutter 65
mutton, shoulder of 88
N
nail 97, 109
nailclippers, pair of 97
naked 109
name of, by the 8
name (to), change one's 8
name, real 8
be named after 8
names 8-9
names, call someone 62
napkin 96
nappy 96, 108
narcissus 81
narrow, to 200
narrow-minded 39
narrow-waisted 34
narrowing of the gap 199
national character 42
national government 181
national insurance contributions 146
national product, gross 181
nationalised industry 181
nationalist 44
nationalities, countries 17-20
nativity play 159
natural 176
natural causes 137
natural monopoly 181
natural resources 78
natural vegetation 80
natural, F 170
navel 32
navy blue 19
near the mouth of 22
nearer big town, the 21
nearly die laughing 63
nearly drown 153
nearly eighteen months old 10
nearly have a heart attack 53
neat style 26
necessarily, not 203
necessary, not 203
necessity and free-will, probability 203-205
neck 109, 125
neck up, from the 26-28
neck, stiff 28
need of, in urgent 204
needle 165
needle, thread the 165
needles 80
needn't 203
negligence 186
negligible 110
negotiation 142
neigh, to 85
neither 197
Neo-Classicist 171
Nepal 18
Nepalese 18
nephew 13
Neptune 77
nervous 50
nervous breakdown, head for a 151
nest 84
net 104, 154, 182
netball 158
nettle 80
network 103
network of canals 78
neurosis 150
never 201
never understood, have 44
new-born baby 10
new record height 154
new staff, take on 182
New Zealand 19
New Zealander 19
new, as good as 149
newly-laid 94
news, break the 56
newsgagent's 93
newspaper competition 166
next 83
next autumn 193
next few hours, within the 193
next few, during the 191
next few, for the 191
next Friday 193
next lights 23
next of kin 13
next to 23-24
next year, this time 192
next, in the 192
next, one evening next 193
next, over the 191
next, the Christmas after 193
next, the week after 193
nibble 69
Nicaragua 17
nicely, come along 149
nickel 116
nickname 8
nicotine 118
niece 13
Niger 17
Nigeria 18
Nigerian 18
night, first 159
nightclub 161
nightfall, at 194
nightingale 83
nine 197
nisi, award a decree 136
nitrogen 116
no better 149
no change 149
no fewer than 110
no need to, be 203
no possibility 204
no way, be 204
no-through road 23
nobody 196
nocturnal 83
nocturne 169
nood 68
noises things make 132-133
non-conformist 44
non-digital watch 193
non-smoker 178
non-stop 178
nondescript 188
none 196
nonsensical, totally 188
noodles 89
normal hair 26
normal, perfectly 201
normal-sized 110
normality 201
normality and regularity 201-202
normally 201
North Korea 78
North of, in the 21
north of, to the 21
North Pole, the 78
North, in the 78
North, to the 78
northerly, in the most northerly part of 22
Northern Ireland 78
northern plains 78
Norway 19
Norwegian 19
nose 26, 105, 125
nose up, turn one's 27
nose, blocked-up 28
nose, blow one's 27, 66
nose, runny 28
nosebleed 28, 153
nostalgic 34
nostalgic 50
nostril 27
not a soul 196
not a trace of 110
not anybody 196
not for ages yet 193
not guilty, find someone 187
not have a penny to one's name 147
not necessarily 203
not necessary 203
not one empty seat 196
not proved 187
not so long ago 192
not to mention 207
not to, so as 206
note 170
note, wrong 170
nothing against, have 44
nothing coming 178
nothing of 25
nothing wrong with one 149
nourishing 173
November 193
novice 143
now 192
now and then, every 201
now on, from 191
now, decades from 192
now, here and 192
now, just 192
now, light years from 192
nowadays 191
nuclear waste 118
nude 109
number 21, 197
number of, a fair 196
number of, a large 110
number plate 101
number, even 197
number, odd 197
number, opus 170
number, small 196
numerals and proportions 196-198
numerous 110
numismatist 164
nun 109
nunnery 91
nurse, registered 141
nurse, staff 143
nursery 91
nursery rhyme 163, 169
nursery school 199
nurses, doctors and 164
nursing auxiliary 141
nut 87, 97
nutmeg 89
nylon 117

O

oak 80, 117
oar 104
oasis 81
oats 88
obedient 40
obese 25
obituary 138
object, unidentified 77
obligation, under no 203
obligatory 204
oblique 114
oblong 114
oboe 168
oboe reed 170
obscurity 186
obstetrician 134
obstinance 41
obstinate 39
occasional 202
occasionally 201
occasions, on special 201
occupant 94
occure to 47
octave 170
octet 198
October, early 193
togenarian 11
toctogon 115
tocupus 82
oculist 37
odd number 197
odd one or two, the 196
odd, really 201
odds 166
off 147
off the coast 78
off the danger list 149
off, be 178
off-colour, be a bit 149
off-peak 147
off-white 119
offence, commit an 186
offence, take 62
offence, traffic 187
offender, serious 137
offer 57
offer, special 147
office 91
office, registry 136
officer, commanding 142
officer, fire-service 141
officer, petty 142
officer, pilot 142
officer, prison 141
officer, public relations 141
officer, security 141
officer, ship's 141
officer, warrant 142
official 156
often, how 201
often than not, more 201
oil 117, 165, 174, 181
oil can 99
oil tank 99
oil painting 171
oily 117
ointment 151
old age 11, 137
old age pensioner 11
old and grey, when 192
old as old one feels, be as 11
old as the hills, be as 11
old enough to know
better 11
old people's home 91
old, grow 11
old, nearly eighteen months 10
old, ten months 10
olden times, in 191
older 11
older generation 11
olive green 119
Olympic dance
champion 157
omelette 173
on a bend in the road 23
on a corner 23
on a peninsular 22
on account of 206
on an island 22
on deck 179
on foot, about forty
minutes 23
on land 80
on one's conscience 63
on one's feet again 149
on one's right 24
on one's side 71
on one's toes 31
on probation 187
on second thoughts 47
on special occasions 201
on stage 159
on stand-by 178
on the banks of 22
on the bridge 179
on the cards 204
on the direct route 179
on the far side of town
from 22
on the first floor 21
on the fringe of 22
on the left 24
on the mend 149
on the open road 178
on the other hand 207
on the other side of 21
on the outskirts of 22
on the quay-side 178
on the right 23
on the right as you look at it
24
on the road 169
on the sea-shore 81
on the second floor 23
on the short side 25
on the side of 22
on the slopes of 22
on the underground, quarter
of an hour 23
on top of the world 51
once 192, 197
once in a blue moon 120,
201
once in a while 201
once in a while 201
one 197
one afternoon last week 19
one day 192
one day quite recently 192
one end, at 125
one evening next week 19c
one of them 197
one of these days 193
one or two, the odd 196
one's heart begins to beat
faster 69
one's mind is racing 47
one's mouth is watering 6f
one, each and every 196
one, every single 196
one, not 196
one, the 197
one, the other 197
one-day 178
one-sided 156, 198
one-way street 23
onion 87
only child 13
ooze 128
OPEC country 181
open 39
open road, on the 178
open, split one's lip 28
open, to 200
open-minded 44
open-neck shirt 108
opening 199
opera glasses 98
opera, grand / light / comic 169
opera, light 159
operation 152
operator, lathe 141
operator, tour 178
operetta 169
opponent 156
opponent of, a fierce 43
opportunities scheme, post-school 199
opposed to, as 206
opposed to, be 43
opposite 78
opposite a florist's 23
opposite, directly 22
opposite, the wall 24
optician 140
optimist 44
optimistic 50
option 47,203
optional 203
opus number 170
or so ago 192
or two, in a second 192
orange 87
orange squash 176
oratorio 169
orbit, to 77
orchestral work 169
orchid 81
order 60
order to, in 206
order, standing 146
orderly 143
ordinary 188
ordinary, out of the 201
oregano 89
organ 168
organ, mouth 168
organ, transplant an 152
organisation, parent-teacher 199
organism 80
origin, country of 17
original 171, 190
originate 13
orphan 14
Oscar 160
osteopath 140
ostrich 82
other day, the 192
other, hand, on the 207
other one, the 197
other side of the river from 22
other side of, on the 21
other, each 197
otter 83
out 166
out and about 149
out of earshot 36
out of hand 44
out of reach 36
out of season 147
out of sight 36
out of the blue 120
out of the ordinary 201
out of the question 204
out of tune 170
out on to the balcony 23
out, inside 108
outbreak, serious 149
outclass 156
outdoor event 155
outgoing 39
outgoings 146, 148
outlet 181
output per employee 181
outside 156
outsiders of, on the 22
outstretched, arms 72
oval 115
ovary 80
oven, double 95
oven-warm bread 174
over 154
over 18,000 feet 78
over a railway crossing 23
over and over in, go 46
over sixties 11
over something, be 149
over the border from 21
over the hill 11
over the moon 51
over the next 191
over the next crossroad 22
over the past 191
over three metres in height 110
over twenty-one 1, 10
over(coat) 109
over, keep 178
over, the worst is 149
over, think something 47
overact, to 159
overall 109
overall majority 111
overcast 51
overcome, be 62
overdose 137
overflow 146
overhaul, to 165
overheat 129
overheated engine 179
overmanning 182
overtake 179
overtaken on the line 156
overtime 142
overtime payment 146
overture 169
overweight 25
overwhelmed 51
overwhelming majority 196
ovule 80
owe 147
owing to 206
owl 83
own entrance, its 23
own, in a class of one's 156
own-goal 156
owned, privately 199
ox 82
ox tongue 87
oxen 87
oxygen 116
oyster 88
pacemaker, fit a 152
pack 84,112
pack, to 178
package holiday 178
packed dinner 179
packer 141
packet 112
pad 112, 155
paddled 109
paddle steamer 104
pain in one's abdomen 32
pain, ease the 151
painful 151
painkiller 151
pains, shooting 151
paint 74, 163
painted 94
painted, as black as one is painted 120
painter 141
painting, portrait 171
pair 112, 197
pair of compasses 98
pair of nail-clippers 97
pair of pliers / pincers 97
pair of scales 98
pair of scissors 97
pair of shears 97
pair of shorts 108
pair of tweezers 97
pairs 197
Pakistan 18
Pakistani 18
palace 91
pale blue 119
palm 29
palm someone off with something 29
palm tree 81
Index 239
pan, frying 99
Panama 17
pancake batter 173
pan 82
pane of glass 94
panic, to 62
pansy 81
pant 66
panther 83
pants 109
paper 74, 117
paper aeroplane 165
paper bag 99
paper, brown 117
paprika 89
parachute 105
parachuting 166
parade, fashion 161
Paraguay 17
Paraguayan 17
parallel 114
parallel to 22
paranoia 150
parcel, pass the 164
pardon 185
pardon, to 137
parent, foster 14
parent-teacher organisation 199
parking space 23
Parkinson's disease 150
parliamentary private secretary 143
parquet floor 94
parrot fashion 83
parsley 89
parsnip 87
part 113
part of the day 193
part, bit 159
part, leading 159
part, remote 22
part, walk-on 159
part-time 143
partial success 196
parting, side 26
partner, doubles 157
partridge 88
parts and components 125-126
party, hen 136
party, stag 136
party game 164
pass away 137
pass away/on 11
pass the parcel 164
passage 159
passage, along a 24
passage, along the 23
passenger, first-class 178
passion 41
passionate 40
passionate 43
passive 40
passport 178
past few years, for the 191
past, in the dim and distant 191
past, just 21,23
past, over the 191
pasta 88-89
pastime 163
pastry 164, 173
pastry, puff 173
pasty 173
pat 69
patch, vegetable 95
patience 41
patient 151
patio 94
patriot 44
pattern 108
pattern, follow the 166
pavement round, follow the 22
paw 86
pawnpaw 87
pay 142
pay damages 186
pay restraint 182
pay, crime doesn't 148
payment 147
payment, mortgage 146
payment, overtime 146
payments, balance of 181
pea 87
peach 87
peach flan 174
peacock 82
peak, highest 78
pear 87
pear, pear-shaped 114
pearl 119
pebble 81
pedal 102, 125, 155
pedal bin 99
peddling, drug 186
pedestrian precinct, through a 22
peel off 74
peel, to 174
peeler 97
peep 68
peg 109, 125
pekinese 83
pelvis 31,33
pen-holder 99
pen-name 8
penalty area 154
penalty, death 137, 187
pencil sharpener 98
pencil-thin 26
pencil case 99
pen 82
penicillin 151
peninsula 78
peninsular, on a 22
genknife 97
nenny to one's name, not have a 147
pension 146
pension, supplementary 142
pensioner 11
pensive 50
pentathlon, modern 157
penthouse (suite) 91
people's home, old 91
pepper mill 97
pepper, black/white 89
pepper, cayenne 89
percentage increase 182
percentage, reasonable 196
perception, extra-sensory 37
perch 71
percussion 170
percussion, extra 168
perfect condition, in 122
perfect health, in 149
perfect pitch 170
perfect time, keep 193
perfectionist 44
perfectly normal 201
perform a skin graft 152
performance 159, 161
performing fleas 161
period 94
period, extended 178
period, Renaissance 171
periods, sunny 50
periscope 105
perm (permanent waving) 26
permit, to 203
perpendicular 114
perpendicular, at an angle of 45 degrees to the 114
Persian 20
personality, character and 39-42
personnel 142
personnel relations officer 141
perspire 69
Peru 17
Peruvian 17
pessimist 44
pet 84
pet shop 93
pet, keep a 164
petal 80, 114
petty and mean 25
petified 53
petrol can 99
petrol cap 101
petrol station 179
petticoat 108
pettiness 41
petty 39
petty officer 142
petty theft 186
phase out 200
phasing out 199
pheasant 88
philanthropist 44
philatelist 164
Index 241
Index
Index 243
read out 56
reading 111
real name 8
realist 44
realistic 40
realize 46
really ghastly 189
really weird 201
reaping 184
rearing 184
reason 58
reason for this 207
reasonable 110
reasonable percentage 196
reassure 58
rebate, tax 146
rebellious 41
recede 26
receipt 147
receiver 125
recently, one day quite 192
reception 136
recession, world 182
recipe 165
recital 170
recite 56
reckon 43
recline 72
reclining seat 179
recommend 43
recommendation 56
reconsider 47
record 155
record deck 165
record height, new 154
record, world 155
record player 169
record player, cassette 165
record player, flight 179
record player, video 95
recording company/label 169
recording session 168
recount 56
recovered, almost completely 149
recovery 151
recovery, make a total 149
recovery, speedy 149
recreation field 156
recruitment 142
rectangular 114
recuperation 149
red 109,155
red as a beetroot, as 63, 120
red carpet 120
red-light district 120
red, brick 119
red, in the 120, 147, 182
red, see 62
red-faced 34
red-handed, catch 120
red-letter day 120
red tape 120
reddish 119
reddish-brown 119
redhead 26
reduce the swelling 151
reduce 200
reduction 147, 199
redundancy agreement 142
redundancy money 184
redundant, make staff 182
reed 81
reed, oboe 170
reed 81
refer to 56
referee 155
refined 188
refractory 181
reflected 127
refrain 169
refreshed 51
refrigerator 96
refund, to 147
refusal 59
refuse collector 141
refuse to accept 43
regain consciousness 149
regard 43
regardless 206
regatta 104
region, agricultural 22
register, cash / till 98
registered nurse 141
registry office 136
regrets, have 47
regular habit, as a 201
regular job 143
regularity, normality and regularly 201-202
regular 201
regularly, how 201
regularly, how 201
regulate the budget 182
regulations, safety 199
rehearsal 159
rehearsal, dress 159
reigning champion 156
rein 155
reindeer 82
reinstatement 142
reject 43
relapse 149
related to 83
related to by marriage 13
Relations Act, Race 186
relations officer, personnel/industrial 141
relations officer, public 141
relations, industrial 182
relationship, love-hate 53
relationship, pupil-teacher 199
relationships, attitudes and 53-55
relationships, family 13-14
relative, distant 14
relatives, blood 13
relax 200
relax in someone's company 53
relaxation 199
relaxed 51
relay, 4 x 100 metres 155
release 137, 169
relegate, to 156
relieve 151
religious instruction 199
reluctant to 47
remarry 13
remedial studies 199
remedy 151
remember, for as long as one can 191
reminisce 56
remote part 22
remotest chance, not the regular 204
removal firm 140
remove 174-175
Renaissance period 171
renamed, be 8
renovate 94
repeat 56
repeatedly 201
repetory company 159
repetitive 190
replace 75, 165
replanting 183
reporter 141
representation, workers' 142
representative of the workforce 142
representative, technical sales 141
reprieve, to 137
reproach 60
reproachful 60
reproduction 171
reproductive process 80
reptile 83
requiem 138
required to, be 204
resend, to 183
resent 54
resentful 50
reserve, first 144
reserved 41
reserves, gold and foreign exchange 181
resign, to 154
resigned to, be 47
resolution, make a resolution to 48
resolve 46
resort area, holiday 22
resources, natural 78
respect 53
respect for, have great respect for, have great
respect 53, 54
respond to treatment 149
respondent 136
responsibility 142
responsibility, to shoulder 29
rest one's elbows on one's thighs 72
rest room 142
runabout 178
runner-up 156
runny nose 28
rush 72
rush-hour 179, 194
rushes 80
russet 119
Russia 18
Russian 18
rust-coloured 119
russell 132
rusty 122
ruthless 40
rye 88
S
sabar 155
sachet 112
sack 112
sacrifice oneself 137
saddle 102
sadist 44
safe 99
safety regulations 199
sage 89
sail 104
sail, set 130, 179-180
sailing race 104
sailor 144
salad 174
salad, fruit 173
salmon 88
salmon pink 119
salmonella 150
saloon bar 176
saloon car 104
saltcellar 97
salt, mineral 80
samba 165
same age 11
same time, show the 193
sand 116
sandal 108
sander 96
sandpit 163
sandy-coloured 119
sapphire 118
sari 109
sash 109
satellite, earth-orbiting 105
satin 117
sarcastic revue 159
satisfactory condition 149
satisfying, totally 188
Saturn 77
sauce, in a 88
saucepan 99
Saudi Arabia 18
Sauvignon 18
sausage, pork 88
savage 188
save money 147
save someone's life 152
savings 146, 148
sausagery 173
say 96, 98
sawdust 161
saxophone 168
say a few words 156
say no to, wouldn't 147
say, may I 156
scald 174
scald one's face 28
scale 86, 111, 170, 174
scales, (pair of) 98
scalpel 98
scandalous 189
scar 27
scare 149
scared stiff 62
scarf 108
scarlet 119
scarlet fever 150
scene 159, 161-162
scenery 159
scheme, day-release 199
scheme, post-school opportunities 199
scheme, sickness benefit 142
schizophrenia 150
schnapps 176
scholarship 146
school dinner 199
school of whales 84
school starting age 199
school teacher,
    primary / secondary 141
school, comprehensive 199
school, nursery 199
school, preparatory 199
school, primary 199
school, secondary 199
school, Sunday 164
school age, coming up to 10
schoolboy 11
schoolgirl 10
science fiction movie 160
scientific 181
scientific department 199
scintillating 188
scissors, pair of 97
scissors, pair of 97
scar 27
scream 65
screen 125
screen adaptation 160
screenplay 160
screenplay 160
scratched 122
scraper 74
scruffy 188
sculpture, classical 171
scythe 97
Sea Lord, First 143
sea, by 22
sea, by the 78
sea bed 81, 104
sea creature 83
sea green 119
sea level, below 78
seagull 83
seashore, on the 81
seasick 179
seal 82
seam 125
seam, able 142
seam, leading 143
season 161, 193
season ticket 178
season, out of 147
season, to 175
seasoning 89
seat 111, 125
seat, ejector 105
seat, lavatory 94
seat, not one empty 196
seat, reclining 179
seat, window 94
seat, five- 111
seat-belt, fasten one's 179
seaweed 81
second 155, 197
second bathroom 94
second childhood 11
second door on the left 24
second floor, on the 23
second on the right 21
second son 15
second string 144
second thoughts, on 47
second turning on the right 23
second violin 168
ship, sinking 180
shipping clerk 141
shirt 107-108
shirt, open-neck 108
shiver 69
shoal 84
shock of one's life, get the 62
shocking pink 119
shoe 109
shop assistant 141
shop floor 182
short 25
short film 160
short cut 23
short of breath 151
short side, on the short 25
should 203
shoulder 29, 108
shoulder bag 99
shoulder of mutton 88
shoulder responsibility, to 29
shoulder, have a chip on one's 53
shoulder-length 26
shoulders back 71
shoulders, hunched 72
shoulders, shrug one's 67
show, floor 161
show, puppet 161
show, variety 161
showy 174
shoe 73
shovel 97
show 159, 161
show the same time 193
shred, to 174
shimmer 174
since, ever 191
sincerity 41
shout 69
shove 73
single 15, 111, 114, 169
single person 179
sink 73
sink unit 95
sinusitis 150
sip 69
sister 143
sister-in-law 13
sitting room 24
situated in, be 21
situation changes, until the present 191
six 197
six-love 157
sixth 197
Sixth Form College 199
size, quantity, dimensions and measurement 110-113
sizzle 132
skateboarding 166
ski champion, downhill 157
skin 117
skin and bones, all 25
skin, jump out of one's 62
skin, soaked to the 128
skin graft, perform a 152
skinhead 26
skinny 25, 34, 117
skip 72
skip a generation 13
skip, to 164
skimming rope 164
skive 74
sight of, hate the 53, 54
sigh 65
sight, out of 36
sight-reading 170
sign 149, 151
sign language 37
sign, make a 68
signal box 103
signalman 141
significant 196
signs, follow the 23
silage-making 184
silk 109, 117
silky 117
skin fabric 108
sill 94
silver 116-117
silver birch 81
silver hair 117
sinter 174
simple 173
simplest 173
sincere 41
sing out of tune 66
sing-song 169
singe one's eyebrows 28
singer 161, 170
single 15, 111, 114, 169
single bed 95
single one, every 196
single room 179
single-parent family 14
singles champion 157
slacks 107
slander 186
slap 69
slapstick comedy 159
slate 94
slate roof 94
sleight of hand 151
sleek 94
sledding 166
sleight of hand, to 151
sleek 94
slender 88
slender 88
slender 88
slender 88
Index

species 83, 112
spectacles, rose-tinted 120
spectacular 188
spectator 156
speculate 46
speech 56, 159
speech, make a 56
speechless 62
speed limit 179
speed limit, exceed the 187
speed, average 111
speed, maximum 111
speeding 187
speedometer 98, 101
speedway rider 155
speedy recovery 149
spending money, earning and 146-148
spherical 114
spice 89
spicy 173
spider 82
spikes 155
spill 75, 129
spin dryer 96
spin, to 129
spinach 87
spine 33
spinet 169
spiral 114-115
spiral staircase 23
spire 23
spirit 179
spirit level 98
spit it out 56
spite of, in 206
spiteful 40
splash 132
splash, to 128
splendid 189
spontaneous group, little 196
split 123
split ends 35
split one’s lip open 28
split up 15
split, fifty-fifty 196
split, to 122
split-level, cooker 95
split-second ago, a 192
splat 123
spoke 102
sponge 155
sponge, vanilla 173
spoon, dessert 97
spoon, soup 97
sport and games 154-158
sports car 103
sportsman 155
spot 27, 86
spot, beauty 27
spotty 153
spout 125
sprain, to 151
sprawl 71
spray, to 128
spread 74
spread, to 127, 129, 149
spreading, prevent something 151
spring 73, 125, 193
spring of, in the 192
sprinkle 175
sprint 73, 156
sprinter 155
sprout, brussel 87
sprout, to 80
spying 186
squad, firing 137
squadron leader 142
square 21, 27, 114, 155
square kilometres 22
squad leader 142
squadron, firing 137
squadron, little 196
squadron, maximum 199
squadron, number of 199
squeal 132
squeal, to 85
squeal 85, 122
squeak 132
squeak, to 85
squeak 70, 74
squirrel 82
stab to death 137
stabilise the economy 181
stability, job 142
staff 182
staff nurse 143
staff redundant, make 182
staff, layoff 182
staff, shortage of 203
staff, take on new 182
staffroom 91
stag 83
stag party 136
stage left 159
stage manager 159
stage right 159
stage, on 159
stagehand 159
stagger 72
staggering quantity 110
stained 123
stainless steel 117
staircase, spiral 23
staircase, up the 23
stairs, flight of 23
stake money 146, 166
stale, go 122
stall 84, 91
stall, to 129
stallion 84
stamen 80
stammer 63, 65
stamp on 69
stampede 84
stamps, collect 164
stamps, trading 147
stand 43
stand a chance 156
stand for 8
stand in 159
stand on 22
stand on, haven’t got a leg to 31
stand on one’s own two feet 31
stand on tip-toe 71
stand, as things 191
stand, can’t 44, 53
stand, hat 99
stand, microphone 99
stand, umbrella 99
stand-by 144
stand-by, on 178
stand-in 144
standard, minimum 199
standard, teaching 199
standing feet apart 72
standing order 146
stands on end, hair 62
staple diet 88
star 77, 159, 162
star, pop 168
star, shooting 77
starboard 104
stare 68
stare at 67
start to finish, from 156
starter 155, 174
starting age, school 199
startle 62
starve to death 138
state 56
state secret 186
state, appalling 124
state, lie in 138
state, secretary of 143
state-owned 181
state-owned industry 182
statement 56, 185
statement, bank 147
states, southern 78
station, coach 178
station, major 103
station, petrol 179
stationer’s 93
statistics, vital 111
statue 138
status, determination of 142
status, marital 15-16
steady decrease 199
steady job 143
steady, go steady with 15
steak and kidney pie 173
steam, to 175
steamer, paddle 104
steaming radiator 179
steamroller 104
steel 116-117
steel guitar 168
steel, stainless 117
steel-blue 119
steely 117
steep 115
steep, maximum 199
stem 80, 125
step 73
step on 69
stepfather 13
steps along the landing, a few 23
steps leading down 23
stereo equipment 95
sterilising bottle 152
stern 104
stethoscope 98
stew 173
stew, in a 88
stew, to 173
steward, shop 142-143
stewardess 179
stewing beef 87
stick 74, 112, 155
sticky 51
stiff neck 28
stiff, bored 54
still life 171
still going strong, be 11
stillborn 138
stilt 161
stimulate the economy 181
stimulating 189
stingray 83
stir 74
stir, to 175
stitch 135, 165
stitches, take out 152
stitching 125
stoat 83
stock 174
stock and shares 182
Stock Exchange 182
stock market crash 182
stocking 108
stocks 182
stocky 25
stole 109
stomach in 71
stomach rumbles, one's 69
stomach ulcer 150
stomach, lie on one's 71
stomach-ache 32
stone 111, 117-118
stone to death 137
stone's throw from, just a 22
stoney 117
stool, piano 94
stoop 72
stooped, be 156
stop 166
stop the itching 151
stop worrying 47
stop you, the law cannot 203
stop, to 129
stopwatch 98
storage heater 94
store detective 186
store, department 93
store, discount 93
storekeeper 141
storey 111
stork 83
storms, heavy 50
story 56
story, adventure 164
story, make up a 46
storyline 162
stout, milk 176
straight 26, 114
straight on, go 22
straight, a 154
strain, to 174
strainer 97
strands, mousy 26
strange, rather 201
strangle 137
strangler 137
strap 125
strap up, to 151
straw-coloured 119
strawberry 87
streak 26
stream, to 128
streaming 199
street 21, 23
street, back 23
street, last one in the 23
street, one-way 23
strengthen 200
strengthening 199
stretch 22, 73
stretch of the river 22
stretch to one's full height 68
stretch, to 130
stretcher 152
strike 47, 75, 169
strike a key 170
striker 155
string of, a 112
string, second 144
strings 170
strip 94, 108
strip a wire 165
strip an engine 165
strip away 174
strip, metal 125
striped 109
stroke 150
stroke someone's hair 69
stroll 73
strong swimmer 157
strong, be still going 11
strong-man 161
strong-willed 34, 39
strongly approve of 43
strongly, feel 43
structural alteration 94
structure, company 144
strum 169
stubborn 39
stubbornness 41
stuck 122, 179
student dentist 144
student, foreign 199
student, university 199
studies, director of 143
studies, remedial 199
studies, supervisor of 143
studio 91
studio couch 95
studio, film 161
study 91, 169-170
stuff, to 175
stumble 72
stunning 188
stupid 188
stutter 65
style 84
style 27, 151
style 80, 112, 171
style, cramp one's 31
style, neat 26
stylist, hair 140
stylus 165
subject 171, 199
subject to 78
submarine 104
submerge 128
subscription 146
subside 129
substances, materials and textures 116-118
substantial 196
substantial quantity of 110
substitute 144
substitutes' bench 156
subtitle 162
subtract, to 197
suburb 22
success 156
success, partial 196
suck 65, 69
Sudan 17
sudden brainwave, have a 46
sudden fit 149
sue, to 186
suede 117
suet 90
suffer a mild attack of 149
suffer from 149, 151
sufficient 110
suffocated 137
sugar 173
sugar bowl 99
sugar, icing 173
suggest 57
suggestion 57
suggestion 57
suicidal 51
suicide 137
suicide, commit 137
suit 108-109
suit of armour 108
suit, three-piece 107
suitcase 99, 178
suite, lounge 95
suite, penthouse 91
sulphur 116
sum total 110
sum up 56
sum, fixed 182
sum, three-figure 197
summer, late 193
summing up, judge's 187
summons 187
sun 77

Index 251
sundeck 180
sun is coming out 50
sun lounge 94
Sunday school 164
sundown 194
sunny periods 50
sunrise, before and after 193
sunshine, bathed in 127
sunshine, ray of 127
super-efficient 188
superb 188
supergroup 168
superintendent 143
superior, mother 143
supersonic 106
supervisor of studies 143
supervisor, sales 141
supplementary pension 142
supplies, do-it-yourself 93
supply 182
supply teacher 144
supply, control the money 181
support 44
supporter of 43
supporting actor 160
supporting actress 160
suppose 43, 46
sure to, be 205
sure, be 48
surface, uneven 114
surfing 166
surge 73
surgeon, dental 140
surgery 91
surname 8
surrounded to the north by 22
surveyor 141
survivor 137
suspect 43, 185
suspected culprit 185
suspected of 186
suspended sentence 187
suspenders 108
suspicious of 43
swallow 69, 83
swallow one, wish a hole would open up and 63
swamp 81
swan 83, 88
swarm 84
sway from side to side 72
sweat 69
sweater 107
Swede 19, 87
Sweden 19
Swedish 19
sweep the chimney 74
sweep, to 128
sweeper, carpet 97
sweeper, road 141
sweetening 173
swelling, reduce the 151
swept back 26
swim 107
swimmer 155
swimmer, strong 157
swimming 158
swing 72, 75, 163
swing, to 130
swirl, to 128
swish 132
Swiss 17
switch 125
switch on 178
Switzerland 17
swollen lip 28
swordfish 83
sword-swaller 161
sycamore 81
Symbolist 171
symmetrical 114
sympathetic 58
sympathy, general 54
symphony 169
symptom 151
syncopated 170
synthesiser 168
Syria 18
Syrian 18
system, solar 77
systems analyst 141
T-shirt 108
table 95, 154-155
table cloth 96
table football 166
table mat 96
table tennis 158
table, dressing 95
table, lead the championship 154
tablets, course of 151
tail 82, 86, 105, 125
tailor's 93
tails 109
take 23, 151
take its name 8, 75, 161
take a deep breath 69
take a keen interest in 43
take away 197
take off a bandage 152
take off, to 130, 180
take offence 62
take on new staff 182
take one's hand away 75
take out stitches 152
take root 130
take seriously 43
take some one's pulse 152
take the handbrake off 178
take the lift 23
take to court 186
takeaway 174
takeaway food 93
take-off 154, 179
taken ill 149
tale, fairy 163
talented athlete 157
tall, extremely 25
tallboy 95
tallish 25	ambourine 168
tan 119
tangerine 119
tangled 123
tango 165
tank, fill up the 179
tank, fish 99
tank, oil 99
tank, water 99
Tanzania 18
Tanzanian 18
tap 69, 125
tap, mixer 95
tape measure 98
tapestry 171
target 155
taxi 104
taxi, twenty minutes by 23
ТВ 150
tea 176
tea-towel 96
tea-towel 96
teacher 141
teacher, drama 159
teacher, primary / secondary school 141
teacher, senior 143
teacher, supply 144	teachers' authority 199
teaching standards 199
tecloth 96
teacup 97
teak 117
team, first 156
team-mate 157
teaspoon 97
teapot 99
tear 62
tear, to 75
tears roll down 62
tears, burst into 62
tears, moved to 62
tease 60
teatime, around 194
the Netherlands 18
the other day 192
the Soviet Union 18
the United States 19
the USA 19
the USSR 18
the week after next 193
the year before last 192
theatrical career 159
this, that 28
threat 58
threaten 58
three 197
three-sided 114
times 197
three-figure sum 197
three-piece suit 107
three-way tie 157
three-wheeled 198
thrilled 50
thriller 160
thrilling 188
throat 27
throat, clear one's 65
throat, lump come to
one's 62
throat, sore 28, 151
thrombosis, coronary 150
through a little wood 23
through a long tunnel 22
through a pedestrian precinct 22
through the French windows 23
through train 178
throughout 94
throw from, just a stone's 22
throw, to 74
thrust 83
thud 132
thumb 29
thrum 83
thunder 51
thyme 89
thunderclap 51
tidal wave 78, 130
tie 108-109
tie for first place 156
tie, bootlace 107
tie, three-way 157
tie-break 157
tier 111
tiger 82, 84
tight trousers 107
tighten up, to 200
tightening up 199
tightrope walker 161
tigress 84
tile 94
till 98
time 191-195
time ago, a long long 192
time again 192
time, a short 192
time and a half 142
time and motion 142
time being, for the 191
time for, have no 44
time goes on, as 192
last time, this 191
next time, this 192
time of day 193
year 193
off in lieu 142
hands 194
time to time, from 201
time, at closing 194
time, by the present 191
time, in another twenty years' 192
time, just a matter of 149
keep perfect 193
time, set at the correct 193
show the same 193
spare 194
waste of 188
keeper 155
times 197
times, in olden 191
times, in prehistoric 191
times, three / four / five 197
timid 41
itimidity 41
timing 159
timing, sense of 37
tin 112, 116-117
open 97
kling 132
nny 117
ty 25, 110
ip 146
ip of, at the southern 22
tip, to 74
iptoe 72
iptoe, stand on 71
ipsy 176
tissue 96
tle role 159
tle sequence 160
tle, retain one's 156
titter 66
to, big 31
oenails 35
oes, be on one's 31
tog 109
together, pull oneself 46
ilet 24
tolerance 41
ertant 41
terate 53
tom-tom 169
ato 87
omb 138
tom( cat) 84
orrow, a fortnight 193
en 111
tone 171
tone-deaf 37
gons, curling 96
tongue 27, 125
tongue, ox 87
tongue out, poke one's 68
onic 176
ons of 110
onitis 150
tool 96
box 99
olmaker 141
oth, chip one's front 28
oth, knock out a 28
othbush 96
2p 107, 125
and, to 174
ap 109
of the world, on 51
p the battery 179
p, at the 23, 114
p, blow one's 62
orch 98
om 123
rso, inside and outside the 32
rtoise 82
oss 69, 74
onal area 78
otal expenditure 146
otal income 146
otal population 196
total, sum 110
tally nonsensical 188
tally satisfying 188
tally unsuitable 189
ouch 36, 69
of, a 149
ouch, sense of 36
ouching 62
ouchy 50
oupee 26
our operator 178
ouring holiday 178
ourism 181
ourist class 178
owards ten o'clock 194
owards the back of the field 156
towards the end of the street 23
towel 96, 155
towel rail 99
tower block 23
town 21-22
town centre 22
town, nearest big 21
toy chest 95
toy with an idea, to 46
oy, soft 163
race, not a 110
ack 111, 155
kuit 109
actor 104
ade, distributive 181
ade, industry and 181
ade, restrict free 182
ading stamps 147
ational jazz 169
ational skill 199
affic 179
affic jam 179, 180
affic lights, across the 22
ffic offence 187
aged, ancient Greek 159
ailer 103, 162
ain 178
ain adventure 180
ain driver 141
ain service 180
ain set 164
ain, by 22
ain, goods 103
ain, underground 103
aine 144
ainer 144, 155
aining 142
aitor 186
nquilliser 151
action, international 182
fer 142
orm 95
fusion, blood 152
plant an organ 152
port 181
port cafe 178
port, to 104
ap, set a 185
apeze 161
et agent 140, 178
et clerk 141
et cross-country 22
elling 178-180
elope 160
rawler 104
ray 125
ray, baking 97
read 73
read on someone's fingers 69
reason 186
asury 181
reated, badly 54
treatment, respond to 149
trelax 169
Index 255
waste of time 188
waste, nuclear 118
wastepaper 99
water 116, 181
water jug 99
water tank 99
water, mineral 176
water, to 166
water-skiing 158, 166
watercolour 171
watercress 87
watering can 99
watering, one's mouth is 69
waterlily 81
watt 111
wave 68
wave, perm(anent) 26
wave, tidal 78,130
wavy 26, 115
way round, long 23
way, elbow one's 29
way, keep out of someone's 53
way, quite a long way from 22
way, quite a way out of 22
way I look at things, that's the 45
Way, the Milky 77 WC 94
weak, embarrassingly 188
weak-willed 40
weaken, to 200
weakening 199
weaker, get 149
wealth, distribution of 148
wealthy 147
weapon 185
wear 107
wear a hearing aid 37
wear glasses / contact lenses 37
wear the trousers 108
weary 51
weasel 83
weather 50
weather, under the 149
webbed foot 86
wedding bells 15
wedding, white 120
wedge-shaped 114
week, one afternoon last 192
weight 111
weightlifting 158
weird, really 201
welcome 43
welded 125
welder 141
welfare worker 141
welfare, economic 181
well as can be expected, as 149
well beaten 156
well thought-out 188
well, feel 149
well, get 149
well, get on 53, 54
well-balanced 40
well-built 25
well-dressed 188
well-educated 188
well-mannered 188
well-off, extremely 147
well-read 188
Welsh 17
Welshman 19
West Berlin 78
West Germany 17
west, due west of 21
West, in the 78
western 160
whale 82
whales, school of 84
what is more 207
what things do 127-131
whatever 206
whatever you like 203
wheat 88
wheel 101, 105,125
wheel of one's car, at the 137
wheel, change a 165
wheeze 66
when 191
when we're dead and gone 192
when we're old and grey 192
when, Heaven knows 193
whenever 206
whereas 206
wherever 206
whether 206
whether, extremely doubtful 204
which 206
whichever 206
while ago, a little 192
while, once in a 201
wine 132
whip 155
whip, to 175
whisk 96
whisk, to 175
whisker 86
whisky 176
whisper 65
whist 165
whistle 65, 132, 155
whistle, blow the 68
white as a sheet, be as 120
white as a sheet, go as 62
white, go 26
white bread 88
white flag 157
white pepper 89
white rum 176
white wedding 120
white wine 176
white with rage 119
white, brilliant 119
white, dazzling 119
white, in black and 120
white-collar worker 141, 182
whittish 119
whole fruit juice 176
wholesale 182
wholly disapprove of 43
whooping cough 150
wide 27
wide plateau 78
wide range of 110
wide variety 78
widen, to 200
widening of the gap 199
widespread 181
widow 15, 138
widowed 15
widower 15, 138
width, in 110
wife, first 15
wife-battering 186
wig 26
wiggle 75
wigwam 91
wild 51,84
wildebeest 83
will 14, 138
willow 81
win 156
win a fortune 147
win on points 154
win the cup 156
wince 63
wind 51
wind up 193
wind, biting 50
wind, breath of 51
winder 125
window 94, 105
window seat 94
window, double-glazed 94
window, under the 24
windows, through the French 23
windscreen 101
windscreen wiper 101
wind-surfing 166
wine(-cellar) 91
wine glass 97
wine, make 167
wine, sparkling 176
wine, white 176
wing 83, 86, 105, 125
wing commander 142
wing mirror 101
wink 67
winner 154
Winner, Academy Award 160
winning post 155
winnings 146, 166
winter, long hard  51
wipe  74
wiper, windscreen  101
wire  117, 125
wire, strip a  165
wiry  47
wisp of smoke  127
with contempt  54
wither  80
within the last few hours  192
within the next  192
within the next few hours  193
without fail  201
witnesses' testimony  187
witty  188
wobble, to  129
wolf  83
woman, married  136
womb  134
wood  81
wood, solid  95, 117
wood, through a little  23
wood-collecting  183
wooden  117
wooden floor, polished  94
woodpecker  83
woodwind  170
woollen  117
woollen jacket, knitted  107
woolly  117
word game  165
words, be at a loss for  56
words, say a few  56
work  140-145
work, choral / orchestral  169
work, hours of  142
work, to  122
worker  182
worker, blue-collar  120, 141, 182
worker, general  141
worker, semi-skilled  141
worker, skilled  141
worker, social  140
worker, unskilled  141
worker, welfare  141
worker, white-collar  141, 182
workers' co-operative  142
workers' representation  142
workforce, expanding  182
workforce, representative  142
working conditions  142, 144
workplace  142
works council  142
workshop  91
world recession  182
world record  155
world, champion of the  157
world of one's own, in a  46
world, movie  160
world, on top of the  51
worn, badly  123
worrying, stop  47
worse, for the  199
worse, get  149
worst is over, the  149
worth, pounds'  110
worthless, absolutely  188
would like to see  43
would quite like  47
would-be  144
wouldn't have thought  44
wouldn't mind  47
wouldn't say no to  47
wound, dress a  152
wounded, fatally  137
wrap  75
wreak  138
wreck, to  127
wrecked  128
wrench  98
wrestle  69
wrestling  158
wring one's hands  68
wrinkle  27
wrist  29
write  130
written over one's face, have guilt  63
wrong note  170
wrong side of, on the  10
wrong with one, nothing  149
wrong with, something  151
wrong, go  55

yet, not for ages  193
yew  81
yoga  166
young  10
youngster  10
Yugoslavia  18
Yugoslavian  18

Z

Zaire  18
Zairean  18
Zambia  18
Zambian  18
zebra  82
zero  196
Zimbabwe  18
Zimbabwean  18
zinc  116
zip  109
zone  78

X-ray  151
xylophone  169

yacht  104
yak  83
yap, to  85
yawn  65
year, in one's seventy-fifth  11
year, leap  193
year, light  77
year, this time last  191
year, this time next  192
year, time of  193
yearn for  48
years from now, light  192
years of age, thirty-six  10
years to come, in  192
years, for the past few  191
years, get on in  11
years, in the coming  192
years, ten  198
yeast  174
yell  65
yellow  120
yellow fever  150
yellowish  119
yen  109
Key

Age
Reading, page 11

The phrases marked with a star are usually used in conversation about a person who isn't there. They might be considered offensive if overheard by the person described or their family and friends.

Marital status
Practice, page 15

1 hearty 2 leggy 3 chesty 4 handy 5 cheeky 6 nosy 7 skinny 8 hairy 9 bloody 9 bloody 10 heady

Build
Reading, page 25

The phrases marked with a star are usually used in conversation about a person who isn't there. They might be considered offensive if overheard by the person described or their family and friends.

Inside and outside the torso
Reading, page 32

The phrase marked with a star is usually used about a person who isn't there. It might be considered offensive if overheard by the person described or their family and friends.

Compound adjectives about the body
Study and practice, page 34

1 knock-kneed bow-legged 2 double-breasted pot-bellied 3 round-shouldered narrow-waisted 4 fair-haired slim-hipped 5 empty-handed right-footed
6 dark-skinned red-faced 7 cross-eyed strong-willed 8 sour-faced light-fingered 9 left-handed big-headed 10 broad-minded cold-blooded

Practice, page 34

1 hearty 2 leggy 3 chesty 4 handy 5 cheeky 6 nosy 7 skinny 8 hairy 9 bloody 10 heady

The senses
Practice, page 37

1 sense 2 sensation 3 sensuous 4 sensible 5 sense 6 sensational 7 senseless 8 sensitive 9 sense 10 sensual

1 sense of power 2 sense of timing 3 sense of humour 4 sense of duty 5 sense of discipline 6 sense of adventure 7 sense of balance 8 sense of fairness 9 sense of fun
Character and personality

Game, page 39

ARIES: outgoing extrovert carefree light-hearted truthful open candid frank easy-going
TAURUS: strong-willed determined self-assured self-confident dominant ambitious demanding energetic competitive
GEMINI: proud arrogant pompous boastful selfish vain self-centred egocentric snobbish
CANCER: critical petty narrow-minded fussy stubborn obstinate materialistic mercenary possessive
LEO: unpredictable indecisive two-faced hypocritical dishonest changeable temperamental insincere unreliable
VIRGO: impressionable gullible weak-willed cowardly passive obedient secretive humble modest
LIBRA: sensible level-headed well-balanced practical calm fair-minded realistic rational logical
SCORPIO: aggressive violent brutal vicious ruthless unscrupulous malicious spiteful vindictive
SAGITTARIUS: passionate hot-blooded brave courageous adventurous lively dedicated devoted loyal
CAPRICORN: considerate tender gentle generous tolerant understanding protective affectionate thoughtful
AQUARIUS: impulsive impetuous impatient excitable rebellious revolutionary forgetful irresponsible uncontrollable
PISCES: shy self-conscious timid reserved sensitive imaginative creative emotional unstable

Attitudes and beliefs

Practice, page 44

Thinking, wanting and knowing

Practice, page 48

1 I'm looking forward to seeing him again.
   I'm dying to see him again.
   I can't wait to see him again.
   I'm longing to see him again.
2 I hadn't planned to spend so long there.
   I didn't mean to spend so long there.
   I wasn't planning to spend so long there.
   I had no intention of spending so long there.
3 I could do with a holiday.
   I feel like a holiday.
   I wouldn't mind a holiday.
   I wouldn't say no to a holiday.
4 I would rather go to London on Saturday, not Sunday.
   I would prefer to go to London on Saturday, not Sunday.
   For me, going to London on Saturday would be preferable to going on Sunday.
   My preference would be to go to London on Saturday, not Sunday.
5 I wouldn't be keen to move away from the coast.
   I'm reluctant to move away from the coast.
   I wouldn't fancy moving away from the coast.
   I don't like the idea of moving away from the coast.
Expressing oneself
Dialogue, page 57
1 greeting, greeting 2 introducing, introduction 3 inviting, invitations
4 accepted, acceptance 5 decline 6 suggesting, suggestion 7 offering, offer
8 hesitant, hesitating, hesitation 9 insisting, insistent 10 agreed 11 warning, warning 12 advising, advice 13 apologising, apology, apologetic
14 reassuring 15 sympathising, console, sympathetic, sympathy, consolation
16 enquiring, Enquiries 17 complaining, complaints 18 demanding, demand
19 threatening, threat 20 insulting, insult 21 complimenting, compliment
22 proposing, proposal 23 congratulating, congratulations 24 thanking, thanks
25 flatting, flattering 26 praising, praise 27 denouncing 28 interrogation, interrogating, questioning 29 protesting, protest 30 encouraging, encouragement
31 urging, urgent 32 refused, refusal 33 pleading, begging 34 promising, promise 35 confiding, confidential, confidence 36 heckling, hecklers
37 ignored 38 blaming, blame 39 admitting, admission 40 confessing, confession 41 reproaching, reproachful, reproach 42 mocking, making fun, teasing, pulling leg 43 boasting 44 accusing, accusation 45 denying, denial
46 reprimanding / scolding, telling 47 ordering 48 describing / condemning, description / condemnation 49 requesting, request 50 reminding, reminder

Reacting to events
Practice, page 63
[1] 1 b 2 d 3 a 4 c 5 a 6 b 7 d 8 a

Sounds people make
Reading, page 65
[1] a baby
[2] a secretary
[3] a magician's act
[4] I had a bad cold, or 'flu.

Gesture, mannerism and body language
Practice 1, page 68
[1] 1 stared 2 peeped 3 peered 4 gazed 5 glanced
[2] 1 e 2 g 3 b 4 f 5 h 6 d 7 a 8 c
[3] 1 d 2 e 3 f 4 b 5 c 6 g 7 a

Practice 2, page 70
1 hugged 2 shook hands with 3 kissed 4 squeezed 5 embraced 6 sat cuddling

Key 261
The plant world

[1] 1 willow 2 yew
3 WILD: bluebell daisy orchid dandelion snowdrop primrose poppy
    GARDEN: iris carnation hyacinth marigold lily pansy rose narcissus crocus

[2] 1 waterlilies on the pond in the middle of the meadow
   2 seaweed on pebbles in rock pools on the seashore
   3 a ring of toadstools in a clearing in the forest
   4 heather and gorse on the heath and moorland
   5 reeds in the marshland and swamps
   6 coral all over the reef and the sea bed
   7 long creepers among the undergrowth in the jungle
   8 moss clinging to the bark of the trees of the wood
   9 ivy climbing the walls of the old house
   10 cacti and palm trees near an oasis in the desert
The animal world
Practice, page 84

1 Male: stallion fox drake gander
Female: mare vixen duck goose
Male: buck dog bull lion
Female: doe bitch cow lioness
Male: ram tiger cock tom( cat)
Female: ewe tigress hen cat

2 dogs puppies sheep lambs
cows calves pigs piglets
horses foals butterflies caterpillars
cats kittens goats kids
hens chicks lions cubs
insects larvae

[3] cows: shed (or stall) dogs: kennel lions: den (or lair) tame rabbits: hutch
canaries: cage pigs: sty bees: hive horses: stable (or stall)
wild rabbits: hole (or burrow) most birds: nest

[4] 1 d 2 c 3 e 4 b 5 a

Food and drink
Practice, page 88

Poultry 1 c Game 1 b
Fish 1 white fish: a b c e oily: d f g h i 4 h
Cereals and grasses a5 b6 c2 d3 e4 fl

Furniture and household
Game 2, page 96

[1] a rake a pair of shears a screw a mop a spanner a pair of pliers
a corkscrew a strainer a cheese knife a ladle a mug a pepper mill
a casserole dish an ironing board

1 a stethoscope 2 a tuning fork 3 a opera glasses b binoculars
c a telescope d a microscope

Vehicles
Study and practice, page 102

1 battery (sparking) plugs 2 boot tyres dashboard gear
3 bodywork bumper 4 accelerator (foot) brake clutch 5 choke carburettor

1 A tandem is for two riders; a bicycle is for one rider.
2 A wheelchair is for someone who is ill; a push-chair is for a young child.
3 A scooter has small wide wheels; a moped has larger thin wheels.
4 A trolley is for carrying things in; a pram is for carrying a baby.
A sleigh is pulled by horses; you sit on a toboggan and slide down hill.

An estate car has a large boot; a hatchback does not.

A tricycle is a three-wheeled cycle; a three-wheeler is a car with three wheels.

In British English, a truck is a small lorry, often with an open area for carrying goods; a van is the smallest kind of commercial vehicle for carrying workmen and goods. In American English, a truck is what the British call a lorry.

A bus, either single- or double-decker, goes regularly throughout the day around a town or area; a tram runs on electricity and along rail around a town; a coach either goes on regular long-distance journeys or on special excursions.

### Quiz 1, page 104

1. raft  
2. houseboat  
3. barge  
4. ark  
5. dinghy  
6. lifeboat  
7. trawler  
8. yacht  
9. ferry  
10. paddle steamer  
11. galleon  
12. liner  
13. punt
14. launch  
15. canoe  
16. powerboat  
17. rowing boat  
18. lightship  
19. submarine  
20. tug

### Size, quantity, dimensions and measurements

#### Practice, page 112

1. branch  
2. species  
3. model  
4. style  
5. brand  
6. group  
7. race  
8. family

2. part  
3. breed  
4. grade  
5. bracket  
6. department  
7. make  
8. form  
9. category

### Shapes

#### Practice, page 114

1. F  
2. A  
3. R

2. hollow cheeks  
3. rough skin  
4. pointed shoes  
5. oval swimming pool  
6. triangular roadsign  
7. sloping roof  
8. sharp blade  
9. spiral staircase

### Parts and components

#### Quiz, page 125

1. telephone  
2. bicycle  
3. bath / wash-basin  
4. toilet  
5. camera  
6. television  
7. electrical appliance  
8. watch  
9. shoes  
10. skirt or dress  
11. flower  
12. vending machine  
13. typewriter  
14. tree  
15. wine bottle  
16. door  
17. aeroplane  
18. car  
19. kettle or teapot  
20. shirt or jacket

2. pair of compasses  
3. hole punch  
4. tent

### What things do

#### Practice 1, page 128

1. b  
2. b  
3. a  
4. c  
5. b  
6. d  
7. a  
8. b  
9. b  
10. d  
11. c  
12. b  
13. b  
14. b  
15. a

### Study and practice, page 129

The words occur in this order: stalling, overheating, breaking down, doing, veering, skidding, losing, letting, running out.
Practice 3, page 130

[1] 1 a clock strikes 2 a volcano erupts 3 a kettle boils 4 a bell rings 5 a ball bounces 6 a violin string vibrates 7 a toilet flushes 8 a pendulum swings 9 a river flows 10 elastic stretches

[2] 1 a bird hatches 2 an aeroplane takes off 3 a flower comes out 4 a plant takes root 5 a ship sets sail 6 day breaks 7 a problem arises 8 night falls 9 a war breaks out 10 the moon comes up

Births, marriages and deaths

Reading 1, page 135

In many legends, storks deliver babies by flying to the parents' house, carrying the baby in a shawl.

Practice 2, page 138

[1] 1 assassin 2 mausoleum 3 asphyxiate(d) / suffocate(d) 4 strangle 5 martyr 6 malnutrition 7 cremate 8 wreath 9 will 10 requiem

Work

Game, page 140

1 dentist (dental surgeon) 2 optician 3 chiropodist 4 osteopath chiropractor masseur (masseuse) physiotherapist 5 hairdresser (hair stylist) 6 photographer 7 solicitor 8 travel agent 9 broker 10 piano tuner 11 antique dealer 12 vicar (priest) 13 (garage) mechanic 14 bookmaker 15 undertaker (funeral director) 16 driving instructor 17 (dog) breeder 18 estate agent 19 architect 20 building contractor (builder) 21 removal firm 22 scrap metal dealer (merchant) 23 glazier (and carpenter) 24 interior decorator 25 maintenance engineer 26 plumber 27 electrician 28 social worker 29 fire brigade (fireman) 30 psychiatrist

Health and illness

Practice 1, page 151

[3] 1 d 2 e 3 a 4 b 5 c 6 f

[4] 1 b 2 e 3 d 4 a 6 f 6 c

Practice 2, page 152

The words occur in this order: setting, performing, fitting, transplanting, saving, taking, giving, taking off, taking out, dressing, sterilising

Entertainment

Practice 1, page 160

[1] 1 western 2 war film 3 romantic comedy 4 (Hollywood) musical 5 science fiction movie 6 horror film 7 documentary 8 disaster movie 9 cartoon 10 travelogue 11 historical film 12 thriller 13 blue movie
Game, page 161
1d 2a 3c 4b 5e

Music and the arts
Game, page 169
[3] 1d 2b 3b 4edcab Sfcdabe

Cooking, eating and drinking
Practice 1, page 175
1 scramble crack beat blend stuff poach whisk 2 chip peel mash 3 dice bone carve mince stew baste braise stuff chop 4 roll knead 5 scale bone steam poach 6 whip blend 7 grate steam peel dice chop shred

Travelling
Practice, page 180
[1] 1 boat 2 boat 3 car 4 train 5 car 6 car 7 car 8 boat 9 train 10 plane 11 boat 12 plane 13 plane 14 train 15 car 16 plane 17 boat 18 train 19 car 20 train

Law and order, crime and punishment
Study and practice, page 185
The words occur in the following order: arrested charged dropped tried trial jury guilty sentenced appeal executed suspect hunt apprehended statements custody court denied confessed plea convicted enquiry execution judges enquiry innocent pardon

Quality
Practice 1, page 189
1b 2c 3b 4a 5d 6d 7b 8aorb

Time
Brain teaser, page 193
The answer is never.

Numerals and proportions
Practice, page 197
[1] 1 eight 2 fifth 3 twice 4 a quarter 5 duet (duo) 6 triplets 7 treble it 8 a single whisky


[3] 9 nothing 10 none